BEGINNER’S LATIN BOOK

WILLIAM C. COLLAR AND M. GRANT DANIELL

This public domain grammar was brought to digital life by:

Textkit – Greek and Latin Learning tools

Find more grammars at http://www.textkit.com
THE

BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK.

BY

WILLIAM C. COLLAR, A.M.,
Head-Master Roxbury Latin School,

AND

M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M.,
Principal Chauncy-Hall School, Boston.

Longum iter est per praecepta, breve et efficax per exempla.
Seneca.

Boston, U.S.A., and London:
Published by Ginn & Company.
1891.
LATINE REDDENDA:

EXERCISES FROM

THE BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK.

The authors of the "Beginner's Latin Book" are of the opinion that a separate edition of the exercises for turning English into Latin will be a great convenience to teachers.

After the exercises have been done once with the help of the special vocabularies and under the direction and criticism of the teacher, it will be found useful to review them again and again, sometimes orally, sometimes in writing, with all helps in the way of rules, special vocabularies, and model sentences removed. The pupil is thus left to depend entirely upon his previous study and faithful attention to his teacher's instructions.

It is believed also that teachers who use other elementary Latin books will be glad to have, in cheap and convenient form, a set of exercises which they can use as supplementary to their regular work. For such, an edition is published with an English-Latin vocabulary.

Both editions have the Glossarium Grammaticum for the aid of those who wish to conduct recitations in Latin.

INTRODUCTION PRICES.
Edition with Glossarium Grammaticum (bound in paper), 20 cents.
THE aim of this book is to serve as a preparation for reading, writing, and, to a less degree, for speaking Latin. It is designed primarily for boys and girls who are to begin the study of Latin at an early age; but as all who would get from Latin the best mental discipline, or lay a broad and firm foundation for Latin scholarship, must traverse pretty much the same road, and as Latin is begun in this country by most learners before any other foreign language is studied, a beginner's Latin book for those who take up the study at the age of ten or twelve need not be essentially different from one designed for learners of fourteen or fifteen. The most important difference would lie in the knowledge of the terminology and principles of English grammar that might be deemed an indispensable prerequisite. As a matter of fact, children come to the study of Latin with all degrees of ignorance of English grammar, and the minimum of necessary knowledge for the beginner is unquestionably very small. What minimum is considered essential for those who use this book, is indicated on page 6. It is hoped, therefore, that the contents of the book will justify its title; that it does not assume too much, and is not too difficult for the least mature who are likely to use it, and that it will not be found too much simplified,—too juvenile, for those who begin Latin in high schools and academies. Simplicity, clearness, and directness have been studied throughout. The system of inflected forms, which is seldom mastered, but the mastery of which is an indis-
PREFACE.

Pensable condition of further pleasant, successful, and profitable study, is slowly but very fully developed, with the addition of abundant and varied exercises. For convenience, as well as on educational grounds, the paradigm of the verb is given in one block, instead of in fragments detached and dispersed, and everywhere the active and passive forms are placed side by side, to be compared, and learned as they are treated, simultaneously.

The idea underlying and controlling the plan is the maximum of practice with the minimum of theory, on the principle that the thorough acquisition of the elements of Latin must be more of art than science,—more the work of observation, comparison, and imitation, than the mechanical following of rules, or the exercise of analysis and conscious inductive reasoning.

The book contains:—

1. A brief introduction explaining the Roman and English methods of pronunciation, the necessary paradigms, an outline of the most important principles of syntax, and a large number of exercises for translation into English and into Latin, accompanied by short explanatory notes.

2. About twenty-five simple Latin dialogues, added to as many chapters. Some of these are on subjects of the lessons, and include a good many grammatical terms; some are on various topics of school and holiday life; and others on subjects historical and mythological.

3. Easy selections for translation, consisting besides a number of fables, of extracts from Viri Romae, Nepos, Ovid, Catullus, Cæsar, and Cicero, some interspersed with the lessons, others added at the end of the book.

Those who seek in a first Latin book a complete presentation of the facts and principles of the Latin language, will not be satisfied with this volume. But, in the opinion of the authors, there is no error in elementary instruction in Latin more common and more deplorable than that of failing to
discriminate between the relatively important and unimportant; between what is suited to the beginning and what to the more advanced stages of the study. It is not too much to say that a very great part of the barrenness and futility of the teaching and study of Latin in schools is due to this lack of discrimination, and to a false conception of thoroughness. It is not intended to imply that a hard and fast line can be drawn, still less is this book offered as a realization in this respect of the ideal. The ideal is never realized. But it has been the constant aim to make just this distinction: to determine everywhere, in the light of much observation and reflection and of long experience, what should be made the subject of immediate study, and what should be postponed; what is entitled to prominence, and what ought to be subordinated. Some excellent teachers think that the subjunctive mood should have no place in a preparatory Latin book; and undoubtedly the syntax of the subjunctive does involve too many and too great difficulties for such a work, if anything more than an outline of some commoner uses is attempted. On the other hand, the learner can hardly read any Latin without encountering forms of the subjunctive. The best way then seems to be to construct a large number of very short sentences for practice on the forms, which shall exhibit, in the briefest compass, some important and most frequently recurring uses of the mood, more especially because the ways of translating the subjunctive cannot be illustrated from the isolated forms in the paradigms, as in the other moods. This idea has been worked out in part in Chapter LIV., the forms having been previously left untranslated.

The *colloquia* have been added, not as an integral and necessary part of the lessons, but to serve as an incentive to the moderate use of Latin orally in recitation, and to afford convenient exercises for training the ear and for enlarging the vocabulary of the learner. The grammatical terms have
been drawn chiefly from the Institutiones of Rudimann. The colloquium on page 5 has been borrowed from Dr. H. Meurer’s Lateinisches Lesebuch, and suggestions and parts of the materials for a very few others have been derived from the same source; also two or three of the passages for translation, and here and there some sentences in the exercises. Whoever examines these colloquia with a critical eye, will find some words which are confined to the vocabularies of grammarians and commentators, and a very few others employed in senses for which it would be embarrassing to be required to cite classical authority. For example, the word pensum is used often in the sense of a schoolboy’s task, something to be done or learned, a lesson. This word doubtless meant strictly a spinner’s task. But in classical Latin it had already approached the meaning task in general, and it is but a very slight extension of its application to employ it as it is in the colloquia. Such a moderate decanting of new wine into old bottles, it is hoped may be excused. Still if any teacher thinks that the Latinity of his pupils will be injured by the use of the colloquia, it is optional with him to omit them altogether, without losing the continuity of the lessons.

The complaint is very common, and its justice must be acknowledged, that first Latin books are often excessively and needlessly arid and wooden. Accordingly an effort has been made, while following a rigorously scientific method in the development of the successive subjects, to impart something of attractiveness, interest, freshness, and variety to the study of the elements of Latin by means of the colloquia, the choice of extracts for translation (introduced as early as possible), and the mode of treatment in every part, extending even to the choice of Latin words, and to the construction of many of the exercises.

Usage is not fixed in respect to the so-called principal parts of verbs, a few of the later school manuals giving the
nominative masculine of the perfect participle, instead of the supine, except in the case of neuter or intransitive verbs. It has been thought better in this book to follow the prevailing practice, only to treat the form that has been called the supine in this connection, not as the supine,—which in most cases it is not and cannot be, since, as is well known, only about 230 verbs can be proved to have a supine,—but as the neuter of the perfect participle.\(^1\) Thus the learner is guarded against errors and is spared the perplexity of having to memorize now one, now another form.

It is hoped that this book can be finished and reviewed by the average learner in a year, and that the transition then to Viri Romae, Nepos, or Cæsar will not prove too difficult. More than two-thirds of the words used belong to the vocabulary of Cæsar, and only a trifle less than two-thirds to that of Nepos. In the case of young pupils it may be advisable to omit the translation of the English exercises into Latin, beginning with Chapter LV., till after the selections for translation at the end of the book have been read.

It remains to acknowledge the generous assistance of several scholars. Professor George M. Lane, of Harvard University, Professor George L. Kittredge, of Exeter Academy, N.H., George F. Forbes, A.M., and D. O. S. Lowell, A.M., both of the Roxbury Latin School, and Marshall W. Davis, A.B., of Thayer Academy, Braintree, read and criticised the work in manuscript. Mr. Forbes and Mr. Lowell also read the proof-sheets and made important suggestions and corrections. The authors feel especially indebted to John Tetlow, A.M., Head-Master of the Boston Girls’ High and Latin Schools, and author of *Inductive Lessons in Latin*, for critically reading the proof-sheets, and for materially contributing to the improvement of the book by

\(^1\) This plan has been followed by Dr. R. F. Leighton in his *First Steps in Latin*. 
the correction of errors, and by the suggestions of his conscientious and exact scholarship.

Thanks are due to Mr. J. S. Cushing, under whose personal direction the book has been printed, for the patience, care, and skill which he has constantly exercised to make the work typographically as faultless as possible.

WM. C. COLLAR.
M. GRANT DANIELL.

Boston, Sept. 1, 1886.

The authors desire to express their grateful acknowledgments to Miss Caroline E. Stone, of the Roxbury Latin School, and to Professor E. M. Wallank, of Fort Worth, Texas, for the correction of errors that had been overlooked in the first editions.

1889.
CONTENTS.

CHAPTER \hspace{2cm} PAGE
I. Introductory: Alphabet, Syllables, Quantity, Accent, Cases, Gender \hspace{1cm} 1-6
II. First Declension. — Direct Object. — Possessive Dative. — Indirect Object \hspace{1cm} 7-12
III. Second Declension. — Words in us and um. — Predicate Noun \hspace{1cm} 13-17
IV. First and Second Declensions. — Agreement of Adjectives. — Colloquium, 58 \hspace{1cm} 17-19
V. Second Declension. — Words in er. — Ablative of Agent \hspace{1cm} 20-21
VI. Second Declension. — Words in er. — Paradigms of Adjectives of First and Second Declensions \hspace{1cm} 22-24
VII. The Verb Sum: Paradigm \hspace{1cm} 25-26
VIII. The Verb Sum: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — Colloquium, 80 \hspace{1cm} 27-29
IX. The Verb Sum: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — Colloquium, 85 \hspace{1cm} 30-31
X. First Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Amō \hspace{1cm} 32-34
XI. First Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — Ablative of Means. — Colloquium, 95 \hspace{1cm} 35-38
XII. First Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive \hspace{1cm} 39-41
XIII. Third Declension: Mute Stems. — Colloquium, 111 \hspace{1cm} 41-43
XIV. Second Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Moneō \hspace{1cm} 44-46
XV. Second Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive \hspace{1cm} 46-49
CONTENTS.

CHAPTER PAGE

XVI. Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive.
    — Colloquium, 126 49-52

XVII. Review of First and Second Conjugations.— Ablative of Separation. — Colloquium, 133 53-55

XVIII. Third Declension: Liquid Stems. — Ablative of Time. — Colloquium, 139 56-58

XIX. Third Declension: Sibilant Stems. — Ablative of Manner. — Colloquium, 148 59-62

XX. Third Declension: Stems in i.— Apposition. — Colloquium, 162 62-67

XXI. Third Declension: Mixed Stems.— Rules of Gender. — Colloquium, 173 68-72

XXII. Third Declension: Review 72-73

XXIII. Third Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Regō, 74-76

XXIV. Third Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — Colloquium, 187.— Passage for Translation, 188 76-80

XXV. Third Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — Colloquium, 195 80-84

XXVI. Review.— Passage for Translation, 199 84-86

XXVII. Irregular Adjectives. — Colloquium, 204 86-89

XXVIII. Comparison of Adjectives.— Declension of the Comparative. — Ablative with Comparatives.
    — Passage for Translation, 215 89-92

XXIX. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.— Colloquium, 222 93-96

XXX. Fourth Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Audiō 96-98

XXXI. Fourth Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive 99-100
### CONTENTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHAPTER</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XXXII. Fourth Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 234</td>
<td>101–103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIII. Third Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Capiō</td>
<td>104–105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIV. Third Conjugation: Verbs in ἢ. — Tenses of the Indicative; Present Imperative; Present and Perfect Infinitive</td>
<td>106–107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXV. Review of the Four Conjugations. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 242</td>
<td>108–110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVI. Fourth Declension</td>
<td>110–112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVII. Fifth Declension. — Ablative of Specification. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 261</td>
<td>112–115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVIII. Special Paradigms. — Passage for Translation</td>
<td>115–116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIX. Personal and Possessive Pronouns. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 289</td>
<td>117–119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XL. Determinative Pronouns. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 274</td>
<td>120–122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLI. Demonstrative Pronouns</td>
<td>123–125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLII. Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns. — Agreement of Relative</td>
<td>126–130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIII. Review of Pronouns. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 290. — Passage for Translation, 291</td>
<td>130–134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIV. Compounds of Sum. — Dative</td>
<td>134–137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLV. Dependent Verbs: First and Second Conjugations. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 302</td>
<td>137–140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVI. Dependent Verbs: Third and Fourth Conjugations. — Ablative with Útor, etc. — Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting</td>
<td>140–142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVII. Numerals. — Accusative of Extent</td>
<td>143–146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVIII. Irregular Verbs: Volō, Nolō, Mālō. — Passage for Translation, 320</td>
<td>146–149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIX. Irregular Verbs: Ferō and its compounds</td>
<td>149–152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. Irregular Verbs: Eō, Pīō. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 332</td>
<td>152–156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LI. Prepositions. Expressions of Place. — Passage for Translation, 339</td>
<td>156–160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LII. Partitive Genitive. — Descriptive Ablative and Genitive. — Dative with Intransitives. — Dative of Service</td>
<td>160-161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIII. Derivation. — Comparison of Words</td>
<td>162-164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIV. The Subjunctive: Sequence of Tenses. — Forms. — Purpose Clauses with <em>Ut</em> and <em>Ne</em></td>
<td>164-171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LV. The Subjunctive: Relative of Purpose</td>
<td>171-172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVI. The Subjunctive: Result Clauses with <em>Ut</em> and <em>Ne</em></td>
<td>173-174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVII. The Subjunctive: <em>Cum</em> Temporal; <em>Cum</em> Causal and Concessive. — Passage for Translation, 378</td>
<td>175-178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVIII. The Subjunctive: Indirect Questions</td>
<td>178-180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIX. The Subjunctive: Wishes and Conditions. — <em>Colloquium</em>, 388</td>
<td>180-184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LX. The Subjunctive and Imperative. — Passage for Translation, 394</td>
<td>184-187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXI. The Infinitive</td>
<td>187-188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXII. Accusative and Infinitive: Indirect Discourse. — Passage for Translation, 407</td>
<td>189-194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXIII. Participles</td>
<td>194-196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXIV. Participles: Ablative Absolute</td>
<td>197-199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXV. Impersonal Verbs: <em>Miseret</em>, etc. — Intransitive Verbs in Passive. — Passage for Translation, 421</td>
<td>200-203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXVI. Periphrastic Conjugations: Dative of Agent</td>
<td>204-207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXVII. Gerund. — Gerundive. — Supine</td>
<td>208-210</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reading Lessons: Letters. — Fables. — Caesar's Two Invasions of Britain. — Customs and Habits of the Britons. 211-222

Latin-English Vocabulary. 223-259
English-Latin Vocabulary. 260-273
Glossarium Grammaticum. 274-276
BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK.

CHAPTER I.
INTRODUCTORY.

It is suggested to teachers who are not experienced in teaching Latin that this chapter may, perhaps, be most profitably used for reference. Pupils will catch pronunciation quickly from the lips of the teacher; and as they make mistakes, they will be interested in being referred to the rules of pronunciation. It is therefore advised that the teacher begin with the Colloquium, page 5, pronouncing slowly each sentence, the pupils following successively, and then together. In the same way the teacher might then construe literally.

1. ALPHABET.—The Latin alphabet has no w. Otherwise it is the same as the English.

2. VOWELS.—Vowels may be long (marked thus "), short (marked thus "), or common¹ (marked thus ""). The long vowel occupies double the time of the short in pronouncing.

3. CONSONANTS.—Of the consonants

   The mutes are: P-mutes . . . . p, b, f
   T-mutes . . . . t, d
   K-mutes . . . . k, c, g, q (u)
   The liquids are . . . . . l, m, n, r
   The sibilant is . . . . . s
   The double consonants are . . . . x = cs,² z = ds.

¹ That is, sometimes long and sometimes short. ² Also represents the combinations hs, qus, gs, vs.

Vowels.

\( \ddot{a} \) is sounded like the last \( a \) in \( pap\dot{a} \).

\( \ddot{a} \) " " " the first \( a \) in \( pap\dot{a} \).

\( \ddot{e} \) " " " \( e \) in \( they \).

\( \ddot{e} \) " " " \( e \) in \( met \).

\( \ddot{i} \) " " " \( i \) in \( machine \).

\( \ddot{i} \) " " " \( i \) in \( pin \).

\( \ddot{o} \) " " " \( o \) in \( holy \).

\( \ddot{o} \) " " " \( o \) in \( wholly \).

\( \ddot{u} \) " " " \( oo \) in \( boot \).

\( \ddot{u} \) " " " \( oo \) in \( foot \).

Diphthongs.

\( \ddot{ae} \) is sounded like \( ai \) in \( aisle \).

\( \ddot{au} \) " " " \( ou \) in \( our \).

\( \ddot{ei} \) " " " \( ei \) in \( eight \).

\( \ddot{oe} \) " " " \( oi \) in \( boil \).

\( \ddot{eu} \) " " " \( eu \) in \( feud \).

\( \ddot{ui} \) " " " \( we \).

Consonants.

Consonants generally have the same sounds as in \textit{English}. But observe the following:—

\( c \) is sounded like \( c \) in \( come \).

\( s \) " " " \( s \) in \( get \).

\( j \) " " " \( y \) in \( yes \).

\( s \) " " " \( s \) in \( sun \).

\( t \) " " " \( t \) in \( time \).

\( v \) " " " \( w \) in \( wine \).

\( ch \) " " " \( k \) in \( kite \).

\[ ^{1} \text{That is, as the word is commonly pronounced; the sound heard in } \text{holy, shortened.} \]

\[ ^{2} \text{In } qu, \text{ and also commonly in } gu \text{ and } su \text{ before a vowel, } u \text{ is a semi-vowel or consonant, and is pronounced like } w. \]

\[ ^{3} \text{Never like } z. \]

\[ ^{4} \text{Never like } sh. \]
5. Syllables.

1. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong with or without one or more consonants. Hence a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: ae-gri-tū'-dō, sickness.

2. When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the vowel following: a-mā'-bi-lis, amiable.

3. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many are joined with the following vowel as can be pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: im'-pro-bus, bad; ho-spes, guest.

4. But in compound words the division must show the component parts: ab'-est (ab, away; est, he is), he is away.

5. The last syllable of a word is called the ultima; the one next to the last, the penult; the one before the penult, the antepenult.

6. Quantity.

1. A vowel is short before a vowel (with few exceptions) or h, also probably before nt and nd: pō-č'-ma, poem; grā'-ti-ae, thanks; nū'-hil, nothing; a'-mānt, they love; mo-nēn'-dus, to be advised.

2. Diphthongs, vowels representing diphthongs, vowels resulting from contraction, and vowels followed by nf, ns, j, and commonly gn, are long: in-i'-quus (inae-quus), unequal; cō'-gō (cōāgō), collect; cōn'-fe-rō, bring together; mēn'-sa, table; hū'-jus, of him; mā'-gnus, great. In this book only long vowels are marked, unless for some special reason.
3. A syllable is long when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: vō'-eēs, voices; ae'-dēs, temple.

4. A syllable is long if it has a short vowel followed by two or more consonants (except a mute followed by l or r), or by x or z; but the short vowel is still pronounced short: sunt,\(^1\) they are; tem'-plum, temple; dux,\(^1\) leader.

5. A syllable is common if it has a short vowel followed by a mute with l or r: te'-ne-bræc, darkness. The vowel is pronounced short.

The above statements are useful in determining the place of the accent.

7. Accent.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first: tu'-ba, trumpet.

2. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when the penult is long, otherwise on the antepenult: praec-di'-cō, foretell; praec-di-cō, declare; ille'-cē-bræc, snares; pa-ter'-nus,\(^2\) paternal.

(1) Several words, called enclitics, of which the commonest are ne, the sign of a question, and que, and, are appended to other words, and such words are then accented on the syllable preceding the ne or que: amat'-ne, does he love? dōna'-que, end gifts.

8. English Method of Pronunciation.—By this method the above rules relating to syllables (5) and accent (7) are observed, and words are pronounced substantially as in English; but final es is sounded as in English ease, and final õs (acc. plur.) as in dose.

\(^1\) u pronounced like oo in foot. 
\(^2\) Here, though the vowel of the penult is short, the syllable is long by 6.4.
The following *colloquium* may be used, if the teacher wishes, for practice, and to illustrate the foregoing statements. See introductory note, page 1.

**9.**

*Augustus.* Quid tibi vis?

*Iūbus.* Tēcum ambulāre velim.

*A.* Ego nōlō; domī manēre mālō.

*I.* Cūr māvīs?

*A.* Ego et frāter vesperī cum patre ambulāre mālu-
mus.

*I.* Cūr mēcum per silvās vagāri nōn vultis?

*A.* Quod vesperī amoenitāte frui mālumus quam sōlis ardōre.

*I.* At jam saepe mēcum ambulāre nōluiisti.

*A.* Nōn rēctē dicis; nōn est causa cūr tēcum ambulāre nōlim; at cum hortus avī satis amplus sit et lacum silvanique contineat, ibi mālumus lūdere. Si vis, nōbiscum venī.

What do you wish (for yourself)?

I should like to take a walk with you.

I don’t want to; I prefer to stay at home.

Why do you prefer (that)?

My brother and I had rather take a walk at evening with our father.

Why don’t you want to roam with me through the woods?

Because we had rather enjoy the pleasantness of evening than the heat of the sun.

But often before now you have not wanted to walk with me.

What you say is not true; there is no reason why I should not want to walk with you; but since grandfather’s garden is quite large, and has a pond and a grove, we had rather play there. If you like, come with us.

**10.** Cases.

1. The names of the cases in Latin are: *nominative*, *vocative*, *genitive*, *ablative*, *accusative*, *ablicative*. 
2. The vocative is the case of address, but it does not differ in form from the nominative, except in the singular of nouns and adjectives in us of the second declension, and hence is not elsewhere given separately in the paradigms.

3. Another case, the locative, which denotes the place of an action, is mostly confined to proper names, and has the form of the ablative (sometimes dative) singular or plural, or of the genitive singular.

11. Gender.—The gender of Latin nouns is determined partly, as in English, by the meaning, but much oftener by the termination.

1. Nouns denoting males are masculine: agricola, farmer; Cicerō, Cicero.

2. Nouns denoting females are feminine: rēgīna, queen; Tullia, Tullia.

3. Names of rivers, winds, and months are masculine: Padus, Po; aquilō, north wind; Jānuārius, January.

4. Names of countries, towns, islands, and trees, are feminine: Afīca, Africa; Rōma, Rome; Sicilia, Sicily; pīrus, pear-tree.

5. Indeclinable nouns are neuter: fās, right.

Other rules of gender will be given under the several declensions.

It is assumed that the learner knows the names and functions of the parts of speech in English, and the meanings of the common grammatical terms, such as subject and predicate, case, mood, tense, voice, declension, conjugation, etc. So much knowledge is absolutely essential for entering upon the study of the following lessons.
CHAPTER II. 1.

FIRST DECLENSION.

12. The stem\(^1\) ends in \(a\).

13. Gender.—The gender is feminine; but see general rules, 11.

14. PARADIGM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. tub(\tilde{a}), a trumpet.</td>
<td>N.V. tubae, trumpets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. tubae, of a trumpet.</td>
<td>G. tubarum, of trumpets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. tubae, to or for a trumpet.</td>
<td>D. tubis, to or for trumpets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. tubam, a trumpet.</td>
<td>Ac. tubas, trumpets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. tub(\tilde{a}),(^2) with a trumpet.</td>
<td>Ab. tubis, with trumpets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. For the reason why the vocative case is not given separately in the paradigm see 10. 2.

2. Examples of the locative case (10. 3) in this declension are: Rōmae, at Rome; Athēnīs, at Athens.

15. TERMINATIONS.—These consist of case-endings, joined with the final letter of the stem. But sometimes the final letter of the stem is lost, and sometimes the case-ending.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. a</td>
<td>ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ae</td>
<td>ārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ae</td>
<td>īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. am</td>
<td>ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ā</td>
<td>īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) The stem is the common base to which certain letters are added to express the relation of the word to other words.

\(^2\) The ablative is variously rendered, according to its connection. It is therefore recommended that, in declining words, no translation of the ablative be given till its use has been illustrated. See p. 20, n. 1.
16. Observe that the genitive and dative singular and nominative plural are alike; also the dative and ablative plural.

17. In Latin there is no article: tuba may be translated a trumpet, the trumpet, or trumpet.

18. The pupil should commit to memory the table of terminations.

19. **VOCABULARY.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Adjectives³</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aquila, v., eagle.</td>
<td>alba, white.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cauda, f., tail.</td>
<td>bona, good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>columba, f., dove.</td>
<td>dura, hard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filia,¹ v., daughter.</td>
<td>lata, wide, broad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pella, f., girl.</td>
<td>longa, long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regina, f., queen.</td>
<td>magna, large.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rosa,² f., rose.</td>
<td>mala, bad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>via, f., road, street, way.</td>
<td>parva, small, little.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>est, (he, she, it) is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunt, (they) are.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Habets, (he, she, it) has. |
| Habent, (they) have. |

20. Observe that in the above verb-forms the singular ends in *t*, and the plural in *nt*.

21. **EXERCISES.**


¹ *Filia* and *dea*, goddess, have a dative and ablative plural in *-abus*, but this is mostly confined to legal and religious language.

² **Caution:** Do not pronounce *s* like *z*, if you use the Roman method. See page 2, note 3.

³ The masculine and neuter of adjectives will be taken up in connection with nouns of the second declension.

⁴ Observe that the adjective takes the case and number of the noun to which it belongs.

II. In like manner give the nominative and accusative in both numbers of the words meaning little girl, great eagle, good queen, wide street. Decline together rosa alba, via longa, bona puella.

3. EXERCISES.


23. Notice the order of the words in the above sentences, and see wherein it differs from the order in English. You will find that—

1. The adjective is commonly placed after its noun. When placed before the noun it is for emphasis.

2. The verb commonly comes at the end of the sentence, but est and sunt are less frequently so placed.

3. The object commonly comes before the verb.

24. Observe that the subject is in the nominative case, and that the verb agrees with it in number, as in English.

25. Observe that the verb habet (habent) is transitive, and has its object in the accusative.

26. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.
27.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. The roads are broad. 2. The streets are long. 3. Queens have doves. 4. The girl has a rose. 5. Eagles have tails. 6. The dove is white. 7. The girl has a trumpet. 8. The eagle is large. 9. The rose is white. 10. The girls are small.

II. 1. The long way is hard. 2. Good girls have roses. 3. Doves have small tails. 4. Great eagles have broad tails. 5. The good queen has a dove. 6. The little girls have large trumpets. 7. The little dove is white. 8. The queen is good. 9. The good queen has a little daughter. 10. A little girl has a white rose.

28. Answer the following in Latin:—


29.

VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

äla, f., wing.
Britannia, f., Britain.
Cornelia, f., Cornelia.

ADJECTIVES.
multa, much (pl. many).
plena, full.
prima, first.
secunda, second.

CONJUNCTION.
et, and.

Galba, m., Galba.
hora, f., hour.
luna, f., moon.

VERBS.
amat, (he, she, it) loves.
amant, (they) love.
dat, (he, she, it) gives.
dant, (they) give.

ADVERB.
non, not.

---

1 Every answer should form a complete sentence. To the question est-ne via longa? the answer should be via est longa.

2 The particle ne is appended to some word in a sentence, often the verb, as a sign of a question, and is not to be translated by any separate word.
Genitive and Dative.

30.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. The queen’s daughter. 2. The queens’ daughters. 3. For the girl’s rose. 4. Of the wings of the dove. 5. For Cornelia’s daughter. 6. Of Britain. 7. For eagles. 8. Of the long streets. 9. For the little girls. 10. To the small trumpet.

6.

31.

EXERCISES.


32. The first sentence in I. is literally translated to the girl is a rose. Evidently the meaning is the girl has a rose, the same as that of the second. The dative thus used with est or sunt is called the Dative of the Possessor, or the Possessive Dative.

---

1 Galba’s daughter. The genitive is often to be translated by the English possessive.

2 Translate, his daughter.

3 It is.
33. Examine the seventh sentence in I. The transitive verb dat has a direct object, columbam; but it also has a dative limiting it, filiae. This dative is called an Indirect Object. Find other illustrations of the following:

34. Rule of Syntax.—The indirect object is put in the dative.

7.

35. EXERCISES.

1. Before turning the following sentences into Latin, translate mentally 2, 6, and 10, in 31. II., taking the words as they stand. Observe that the indirect object precedes the direct.

2. In the following exercises try to cast each sentence into the Latin form before thinking of the Latin words. Thus, the sixth sentence will take the form, the girl to the queen a rose gives; and the eighth, to a girl little is a rose little, or a girl little a rose little has.

I. 1. It¹ is the first hour. 2. There² is a full moon. 3. The moon is full. 4. The dove is small. 5. The tail of the eagle is broad. 6. The girl gives the queen³ a rose. 7. The queen’s roses are white. 8.⁴ A little girl has a little rose. 9. The first hour is a long one.⁵ 10. Galba gives the girls some² roses.

II. 1. The queen’s daughter has a white rose. 2. The queen of Britain gives the girl a great rose. 3. It is the second hour of the full moon. 4. The daughters of Cornelia are small girls.⁵ 5. The daughters of Cornelia are good little⁶ girls.⁵ 6. The little dove’s tail is a long one. 7. The wings of eagles are long and broad. 8. Eagles have long, broad⁷ wings. 9. The little dove has a white tail. 10.⁴ Many doves have white tails.

¹ Omit. Compare 31. II. 3 and 4.
² Omit.
³ That is, to the queen. Compare 31. I. 7, 8, and 9; and 31. II. 2, 6, and 10.
⁴ Translate in two ways, like 31. I., 1 and 2, 3 and 4.
⁵ Nominative.
⁶ In Latin, good and little.
⁷ Long and broad.
CHAPTER III. 1.
SECOND DECLENSION.

36. The stem ends in o.

37. Gender.—Nouns ending in um are neuter; most others are masculine; but see general rules for gender, 11. 4.

38. **Paradigms.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. hortus, ē</td>
<td>hortī,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. hortī</td>
<td>hortōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. hortō</td>
<td>hortīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. hortum</td>
<td>hortōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. hortō</td>
<td>hortīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. bellum</td>
<td>bella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. bellī</td>
<td>bellōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. bellō</td>
<td>bellīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. bellum</td>
<td>bella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. bellō</td>
<td>bellīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

39. The vocative singular of nouns in us of this declension ends in ē.

1. As these are the only Latin nouns having a form for the vocative different from the nominative, this peculiarity is best regarded and treated as an exception.

40. Examples of the locative case (10. 3) in this declension are: Corinthī, at Corinth; Thūriīs, at Thūriī.

41. **Terminations.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. us, ē</td>
<td>um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. i</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ō</td>
<td>ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. um</td>
<td>um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ō</td>
<td>ō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

42. Although the stem ends in o, the o does not appear except in the dat. and abl. singular and in the gen. and acc. plural.

1 For peculiarities of nouns in ins and ium see 79.
2.

43. VOCABULARY.

**NOUNS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amicus, friend</td>
<td>bracchium, arm. (79.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cibus, food</td>
<td>dōnum, gift.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discipulus, pupil</td>
<td>ōvum, egg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dominus, lord, master</td>
<td>pilum, javelin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equus, horse</td>
<td>pōculum, cup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servus, slave or servant</td>
<td>vinum, wine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVES.</th>
<th>VERBS.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dēfessus, -a, -um, tired</td>
<td>laudat, (he, she, it) praises.¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūrus, -a, -um, hard</td>
<td>laudant, (they) praise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grātus, -a, -um, pleasing</td>
<td>portat, (he, she, it) carries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novus, -a, -um, new</td>
<td>portant, (they) carry.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

44. Adjectives of the first and second declensions have three terminations to mark the different genders: bonus, masculine; bona, feminine; bonum, neuter. The feminine of the adjective is declined like tōba, the masculine like hortus, and the neuter like bellum. The full declension of bonus is given on page 24.²

1. Form the masculine and neuter of all the adjectives in 19 and 29.

**NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.**

45. EXERCISES.

1. 1. Amīcī bonī. 2. Amīcus bonus. 3. Amīcōs bonōs.

¹ Laudat may be translated praises, is praising, or does praise. So of the other verb-forms. ² In declining adjectives, it will be found advantageous to decline each gender separately.
SECOND DECLENSION.

II. 1. In like manner form the nominative and accusative in both numbers of the words meaning long \(^1\) javelin, hard master, small horse, good wine. Decline together bonus cibus, servus malus, vinum novum.

46. Examine the following sentences:

Galba est amīcus, Galba is a friend.
Galba et Cornēlia sunt amīci, Galba and Cornelia are friends.

1. Observe in these examples that the subject and predicate nouns are in the same case, just as in English.

47. Rule of Syntax.—A noun in the predicate referring to the same person or thing as the subject is in the same case.

3.

48. Exercises.


II. 1. The servant has the cup. 2. The servants have the cups. 3. The pupil has wine and eggs. 4. The master has good food. 5. The gifts are long javelins. 6. The master and the slave are good friends. 7. The little horses are tired. 8. The new pupil has a big \(^2\) cup. 9. They praise the second horse. 10. He is praising the good master. 11. They have some \(^3\) good friends. 12. The slave carries the cups and wine.

\(^1\) The adjective must be of the same gender as the noun.

\(^2\) See page 19, note 1.

\(^3\) Omit.
4.  

GENITIVE AND DATIVE.

49.  

EXERCISES.


II. In like manner, form the genitive and dative in both numbers of the words meaning long javelin, hard master, small horse, good wine. Decline together bonus amīcus, discipulus malus, dönum grātum.

50.  

EXERCISES.


II. 1. The gift is pleasing to the good friend. 2. The slave has the master's cup. 3. The servants have the masters' cups. 4. The master gives the slave a hard egg. 5. The food of the master is wine and eggs. 6. The master praises the little pupil's cup. 7. The tired horses are carrying gifts for the friend. 8. The girl has many new friends. 9. The broad cup is pleasing to the new pupil. 10. The eagle's eggs are gifts of the good servant.

1 When there is no subject expressed in the sentence, how is the verb to be rendered?

2 Translate in two ways. See 32.

3 Not accusative.

4 Many and new.
6.

51. Answer the following in Latin:¹


Form and answer five other questions in Latin.

---

CHAPTER IV. 1.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

52. VOCABULARY.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUNS</th>
<th>ADJECTIVES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>clārus, -a, -um, famous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agricola, -ae, farmer.</td>
<td>perītus, -a, -um, skilful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nauta, -ae, sailor.</td>
<td>quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poēta, -ae, poet.</td>
<td>quintus, -a, -um, fifth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carrus, -i, wagon.</td>
<td>tertius, -a, -um, third.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēmus, -i, oar.</td>
<td>validus, -a, -um, strong, sturdy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventus, -i, wind.</td>
<td>Neuter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frūmentum, -i, grain.</td>
<td>in (with ablative), in, on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pābulum, -i, fodder.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

53. In the preceding exercises an adjective qualifying a noun has had the same termination as the noun. Now observe the following examples: agricola bonus, a good farmer; agricolaе boni, of a good farmer; agricolaе bonē, to or for a good farmer, etc. Here the adjective has a different termination from the noun. Since agricola is masculine, the adjective that goes with it must have the masculine form, as well as the same number and case.

¹ See note 1, p. 10.
² for, not to, the master.
³ When ne is appended to nōn, the answer yes is expected. See note 2, p. 10. So in English, a question asked with not expects the answer yes.
⁴ See 11. 1.
54. Rule of Syntax.—Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

55. exercises.


56. exercises.

II. 1. Ō agricola valide, carrus est plēnus frūmentī. 2. Domine bone, secunda hōra est, et discipulus est dēfessus. 3. Hortōs agricolārum perītōrum laudant. 4. Pōculum māgnum est vīni plēnum. 5. Agricola bonus equō validō dat pābulum.

1 See §2.

2 We may translate, there is a full moon, it is a full moon, or the moon is full. There is nothing in Latin answering to our it and there used in this way at the beginning of a sentence.

3 Translate this sentence without changing the order of the words, and you will feel the emphasis imparted to nautae from its position.

4 Ō sometimes accompanies the vocative.
3.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. The poet likes\(^1\) the farmer’s wine. 2.\(^2\) Farmers have large wagons and strong horses. 3. Skilful sailors like a good breeze. 4. In the garden there\(^3\) are many roses. 5. The poet and his\(^3\) daughter are in the wagon. 6. The horse carries the farmer’s grain. 7. There is wine in the little girl’s cup. 8. There are many\(^4\) small girls in the street. 9. Galba carries fodder for the horses. 10. The food of the little dove is grain.

II. 1. My (\(\bar{O}\)) good friend, the master’s cup is full. 2. The servant gives the queen\(^5\) a large cup. 3. The strong sailors are carrying javelins in their\(^3\) arms. 4. In the strong wagon is good fodder for the farmer’s horses. 5. In the poet’s gardens there are many friends. 6. Farmers have horses, wagons, doves, eggs, and\(^3\) wine.

4.

COLLOQUIUM.

Datne\(^6\) Carolus (Charles) amīcō cymbam (boat)?
Carolus amīcō cymbam et rēmōs dat.
Quid in cymbā habet Carolus?
Carolus rēnum et pīlum in cymbā habet.
Quota (what) hōra est?\(^7\) Hōra est quintā.
Quid in carrō habet rūsticus (countryman) validus?
Quid in pōculō désiderat (wants) rūsticus défessus?

---

\(^1\) Occasionally words occur in the English exercises which are purposely not given as definitions in the vocabularies, but by a little thought the pupil will understand what Latin word is meant.

\(^2\) Translate in two ways.

\(^3\) Omit.

\(^4\) Many and small.

\(^5\) Not accusative.

\(^6\) Remember that ne is appended as the sign of a question.

\(^7\) What time is it? or, What is the time of day?
CHAPTER V. 1.

SECOND DECLENSION.

59. **Puer, boy.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. puer</td>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. puerī</td>
<td>puerōrum</td>
<td>ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. puerō</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>ò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. puerōrum</td>
<td>puerōs</td>
<td>um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. puerō ¹</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>ò</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

60. **VOCABULARY.**

gener, -eri, m., son-in-law.
liberī, -orum, (pl.) m., children.
socer, -eri, m., father-in-law.
vir, virī, m., man, hero.
asper, -era, -erum, rough.
liber, -era, -erum, ² free.
miser, -era, -erum, poor, wretched.
puerī, general word for children.
liberī, children of free parents.
tener, -era, -erum, tender.
sextus, -a, -um, sixth.
ā (a b), prep. w. abl., by, away from.
amātur, (he, she, it) is loved.
amantur, (they) are loved.
laudātur, (he, she, it) is praised.
laudantur, (they) are praised.

61. *The farmer is praised by the queen* would be expressed in Latin thus: **Agricola ā (or ab) rēgīnā laudātur;** and *The queen is praised by the farmer,* thus: **Rēgīna ab (not ā) agricolā laudātur.**

Observe that in the first sentence, rēgīnā, and in the second, agricola, denotes the person by whom the thing is done (the agent); also, that these words are in the ablative, and are preceded by ā or ab. The ablative thus used, together with the preposition, answers the question *by whom?* and is called the ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

¹ To translate puerō, “with, from, by a boy,” as is commonly done, is wholly wrong. *With a boy* would be cum puerō; *from, or by a boy,* ā puerō. See p. 7, note 2.

² Decline the masculine of adjectives in er in this lesson like puer. The full declension is given on p. 24.
62. Rule of Syntax. — The agent with passive verbs is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab,—ab before vowels or h, ā or ab before consonants.

63. Read again 53 and 54, then add the proper terminations of the adjectives, and translate the following:—


II. 1. By the bad father-in-law. 2. By the rough sailor. 3. By the children of the hero. 4. The free men (nom. and acc.). 5. Of the wretched sons-in-law.

2.

64. Exercises.


II. 1. The sons-in-law of the men are farmers. 2. Good men are praised by their friends. 3. The boy is loved by the rough sailors. 4. The sixth boy is a new one. 5. The tired children are in the farmer’s wagon. 6. The tender dove is loved by the little girl. 7. Poor slaves are not praised by their rough masters. 8. The strong man is in the poet’s garden. 9. The heroes are praised by the pupils. 10. They love the daughter of the poor sailor.

1 Adjective, preposition, noun, the three are combined. What is is often the order where, as here, the English order? 2 Omit.
CHAPTER VI. 1.
SECOND DECLENSION.

65. PARADIGM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. ager</td>
<td>agrī</td>
<td>sing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. agrī</td>
<td>agrōrum</td>
<td>ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. agrō</td>
<td>agrīs</td>
<td>ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. agrum</td>
<td>agrōs</td>
<td>um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. agrō</td>
<td>agrīs</td>
<td>ō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe that the above terminations are the same as those on page 20. Wherein does the declension of ager differ from that of puer?

66. VOCABULARY.

aper, apri, m., boar.
culter, cultri, m., knife.
faber, -bri, m., smith.
liber,1 -bri, m., book.
magister, -tri, m., master.
minister, -tri, m., servant.

mægister, a superior, director; hence, master of a school, etc.
dominus (43), master of a household, slaves, etc.
minister, an inferior, attendant, servant.
servus (43), a serving man, slave.

67. Most nouns in er are declined like ager, and most adjectives in er like aeger. The most important nouns and adjectives that keep the e before r in all the cases were given in the vocabulary, 60, and should now be committed to memory.

68. Decline together equus niger, bonus faber, aper asper, vir aeger.

1 Distinguish liber, free, from liber, book. 2 See p. 24.
2.

69. EXERCISES.


II. 1. The fathers-in-law are smiths.  2. The masters are loved by their pupils.  3. The man's son-in-law is a servant.  4. The knives are pleasing to the little boy.  5. The pretty cups are liked by the boys and girls.  6. A girl gives a man a beautiful rose.  7. The sailors have many long knives.  8. The children of the master are carrying the books in their arms.  9. The smith's son-in-law has children.  10. There is a rough boar in the farmer's field.

70. Answer the following in Latin:—


---

1 What is peculiar in the order of the words? Translate as the words stand, and see what word is made emphatic by its position.
2 What case is used after est and sunt? Compare the first three sentences in I. See rule, 47.
3 See p. 19, note 1.
4 Not accusative.
### Adjectives: First and Second Declensions.

#### 71. Paradigms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bonus, good.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. N.V. bon us, ē</td>
<td>bon a</td>
<td>bon um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. bonō</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. bon um</td>
<td>bonam</td>
<td>bon um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. bonō</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. N.V. bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. bon ōrum</td>
<td>bonārum</td>
<td>bon ōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. bonōs</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Liber, free.** | | |
| Sing. N.V. liber | libera | liber um |
| G. liberī | liberae | liberī |
| D. liberō | liberae | liberō |
| Ac. liber um | liberam | liber um |
| Ab. liberō | liberā | liberō |
| Plur. N.V. liberī | liberae | libera |
| G. liber ōrum | liberārum | liber ōrum |
| D. liberīs | liberīs | liberīs |
| Ac. liberōs | liberās | libera |
| Ab. liberīs | liberīs | liberīs |

| **Aeger, sick.** | | |
| Sing. N.V. aeger | aegra | aegrum |
| G. aegrī | aegræae | aegrī |
| D. aegrō | aegræae | aegrō |
| Ac. aegrum | aegrām | aegrum |
| Ab. aegrō | aegrā | aegrō |
| Plur. N.V. aegrī | aegræae | aegra |
| G. aegrōrum | aegrārum | aegrum |
| D. aegrīs | aegrīs | aegrīs |
| Ac. aegrōs | aegrās | aegra |
| Ab. aegrīs | aegrīs | aegrīs |
THE VERB **Sum**.

**CHAPTER VII.**

THE IRREGULAR VERB **Sum** (stems *es, fu*), *I am.*

72. Principal parts: *sum, esse, fuī.*

73. For convenience the inflection of *sum* is given in full. Directions will be given from time to time as to what parts are to be learned.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

**Present Tense.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. *sum,*¹ <em>I am.</em></td>
<td><em>sumus,</em> we are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>es,</em> thou art.²</td>
<td><em>estis,</em> you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>est,</em> he (she, it) is.</td>
<td><em>sunt,</em> they are.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

| 1. *erō,*³ *I was.* | *erāmus,* we were. |
| 2. *eras,* thou wast. | *erātis,* you were. |
| 3. *erat,* he was. | *erant,* they were. |

**Future.**

| 1. *erō,*⁴ *I shall be.* | *erimus,* we shall be. |
| 2. *eris,* thou will be. | *eritis,* you will be. |
| 3. *erit,* he will be. | *erunt,* they will be. |

**Perfect.**

| 1. *fuī,* I have been, was. | *fuimus,* we have been, were. |
| 2. *fuisti,* thou hast been, wast. | *fuistis,* you have been, were. |
| 3. *fuit,* he has been, was. | *fuērent,* or |
|                           | *fuēre,* they have been, were. |

**Pluperfect.**

| 1. *fuēram,* I had been. | *fuērāmus,* we had been. |
| 2. *fuērās,* thou hadst been. | *fuērātis,* you had been. |
| 3. *fuērat,* he had been. | *fuērant,* they had been. |

¹ *Sum* for *esum.*

² Or, *you are,* as in the plural. But in translating into Latin be careful to use the singular form only.

³ *Eram* for *esam.*

⁴ *Erō* for *esō.*
### THE VERB SUM.

**Future Perfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. fuerō, I shall have been.</td>
<td>fuerimus, we shall have been.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fueris, thou will have been.</td>
<td>fueritis, you will have been.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. fuerit, he will have been.</td>
<td>fuerint, they will have been.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerim</td>
<td>fuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueris</td>
<td>fueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fuerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuerim</td>
<td>fuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueris</td>
<td>fueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fuerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuerim</td>
<td>fuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueris</td>
<td>fueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fuerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>estō, thou shalt be.</td>
<td>estote, ye shall be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estō, he shall be.</td>
<td>sanntō, they shall be.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive.**

- Present, esse, to be.
- Perfect, fuisset, to have been.
- Future, futūrus esse, to be about to be.

**Participle.**

futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.

---

1 No meanings can be given to the subjunctive that are not misleading. Its forms are therefore better left untranslated until its use has been illustrated. The subjunctive is treated on pp. 164–186.
CHAPTER VIII. 1.

THE VERB Sum.

74. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive.

75. EXERCISES.


II. 1. I am, we are, I was, we were, I shall be, we shall be. 2. He was, they were, he is, they are, he will be, they will be. 3. You (sing.) will be, are, were. 4. You (plur.) will be, are, were. 5. Be ye, be thou. 6. To be.

2.

From this point the vocabularies follow the exercises, and it is recommended that the pupil go through the exercises mentally, referring to the vocabularies for the meanings of words. Before writing the translations into Latin the vocabularies should be reviewed, but the task of committing to memory will then be found an easy one.

76. EXERCISES.


1 What word is better left untranslated, though needed in the Latin?
II. 1. The farmer had a wagon. 2. I shall be the man’s friend. 3. There is a large town on the island. 4. There was a red egg on the table. 5. Children were carrying the food of the men. 6. A boy gave a smith some javelins. 7. In the town are enemies of the inhabitants. 8. They were praising the words of the sturdy farmer. 9. The poet’s gifts will be pleasing to Minerva. 10. Boys, be ye strong and skilful.

3.

77.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. A girl gave a sick sailor some wine and water. 2. The wine she carried in a pretty cup. 3. He praised the maiden’s pretty cup and the ruddy wine. 4. The maiden and the sailor were inhabitants of Britain. 5. Britain is a large island, and has handsome towns.

78.

VOCABULARY.

aqua, -ae, f., water.
āra, -ae, f., altar.
arātrum, -i, n., plough.
cōnsiliō, -i, n., advice, plan.
incola, -ae, m. & f., inhabitant.
inimicus, -i, m., enemy.
insula, -ae, f., island.
mēnsa, -ae, f., table.

1 Translate in two ways.
2 Omit. See p. 18, note 2.
3 See vocabulary, 52.
4 Indirect object, see 33 & 34.
5 Compare the order with that of 69. I. 10, and see the note there. What name is given to the dative agricola?
6 See 69. II. 6, and note.
7 See p. 19, note 1.
THE VERB Sum.

Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, goddess of wisdom.

nōnus, -a, -um, adj., ninth.
octāvus, -a, -um, adj., eighth.
oculus, -i, m., eye.

Oppidum, -i, n., town.
rāna, -ae, f., frog.
somnus, -i, m., sleep.
terra, -ae, f., earth, land.
verbum, -i, n., word.

amābat, (he she it) was loving, loved.
dabat, (he, she, it) was giving, gave.
habēbat, (he, she, it) was having, had.
laudābat, (he, she, it) was praising, praised.
portābat, (he, she, it) was carrying, carried.

amābant, they were loving, loved.
dabant, they were giving, gave.
habēbant, they were having, had.
laudābant, they were praising, praised.
portābant, they were carrying, carried.

79. Nouns in ius and ium contract the genitive ending ū to ī: cōnsilī. Fīlius (son) and genius (guardian deity), and proper nouns in ius, drop the e of the vocative: fīli, Mercurī, Mercury. But the word is accentted as if the longer form were used.

4.

80. COLLOQUIUM.

Nōnne aquam in pōculō habet faber?

Minimē. Faber in pōculō habet novum vīnum.

Dēsideratne Galba somnum grātum?

Certē, nam hodiē est Galba dēfessus.

Ubi est amīcus agricolae pigri?

Est in oppidō, nam nōn amābat amīcī cōnsilium.

Ubi sunt arma agricolārum validōrum?

Agricolārum equī, carrī, arātra sunt in agrō.
CHAPTER IX. 1.
THE VERB Sum.


82. EXERCISES.
I. 1. Fuit, fuerat, fuerit. 2. Fuérunt, fuerant, fuerint.
3. Fuimus, fueramus, fuerimus. 4. Fuerō, fueram, fui.
5. Fuerās, fueris, fuistī. 6. Fuistis, fueritis, fuerātīs.
7. Fuisse.

II. 1. I have been, we have been, I had been, we had been, I shall have been, we shall have been. 2. He has been, they have been, he had been, they had been, he will have been, they will have been. 3. You (sing.) will have been, had been, have been. 4. You (plur.) will have been, had been, have been. 5. To have been.

83. EXERCISES.

II. 1. They had been in the towns of the Greeks. 2. The monuments of Greece were temples and statues. 3. The statue of Minerva had a shield and spear. 4. The arms of the Greeks were shields and spears. 5. The gods had many statues in Greece. 6. The red roses will be pleasing to the
queen. 7. The man’s children are in the street. 8. He has been on the farmer’s horse. 9. The children are carried in the poet’s arms. 10. Many inhabitants of Britain have been skilful sailors.

84. VOCABULARY.

altus, -a, -um, adj., deep, high.  
glöria, -ae, f., glory.
antiquus, -a, -um, adj., ancient.  
Græcia, -ae, f., Greece.
arma, -ōrum, n. (plur.), arms.  
Græcūs, -i, m., a Greek.
aureus, -a, -um, adj., of gold,  
hibit, -ae, f., spear.
golden.  
monumentum, -i, n., monument
aurum, -i, n., gold.  
sclūtum, -i, n., shield.
dea, -ae, f., goddess.  p. 8, n. 1.  
sempiternus, -a, -um, adj., ever-
decimus, -a, -um, adj., tenth.  
lasting.
deus, -i, m., god (262).  
statua, -ae, f., statue.
fluvius, -i, m., river (79).  
templum, -i, n., temple.

3.

85. COLLOQUIUM.

Duo Puerī.

Ubi est Carolus hodie? Nōnne est in scholā?

Charles  school

Minimē. Est in fluvio; nam habet cymbam parvam, et

likes sailing

Unde Carolō est cymba? Where did C. get a boat?

whence to Charles is a boat.

Ab avunculō, nam Carolus ab avunculo amatūr.

from uncle

Quid in cymbā portat Carolus?

Nescio; procul dubiō prandium; etenim in animō

I don’t know doubtless luncheon for mind

habet . . .

Quid in animō habet?

Valē, bone amīce, crās patēbit.

good by to-morrow it will be open = the secret will be out.
CHAPTER X.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

86. A-VERBS.

Amō (stem amā), love.

Principal Parts: 1 amō, amāre, amāvi, amātum.

### INDICATIVE.

#### ACTIVE VOICE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Passive Voice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I love, am loving, do love, etc.</td>
<td>I am loved, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amō</td>
<td>amāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amās</td>
<td>amātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amat</td>
<td>amant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERFECT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I loved, was loving, did love, etc.</th>
<th>I was loved, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amābām</td>
<td>amābāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābās</td>
<td>amābātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābāt</td>
<td>amābant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### FUTURE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall love, etc.</th>
<th>I shall be loved, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amābō</td>
<td>amābimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābis</td>
<td>amābitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābit</td>
<td>amābunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PERFECT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have loved, I loved, etc.</th>
<th>I have been (was) loved, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāvī</td>
<td>amāvimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvistī</td>
<td>amāvistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvit</td>
<td>amāvērunt, or-re</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1 Certain forms of the verb are called, from their importance, principal parts. These forms are the first person of the present indicative, showing the present stem; the present infinitive, showing the conjugation; the first person of the perfect indicative, showing the perfect stem; and the perfect participle, showing the participle stem. The neuter of the participle is given, as intransitive verbs have the perfect participle only in that gender.
ACTIVE VOICE.  PASSIVE VOICE.

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved, etc.  I had been loved, etc.

amāveram  amāverāmus  eram  erāmus
amāverās  amāverātis  amātus  erās  amātī  erātis
amāverat  amāverant  erat  erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have loved, etc.  I shall have been loved, etc.

amāverēō  amāverēimus  erō  erēmus
amāverēis  amāverēitis  amātus  erēis  amātī  erētis
amāverēit  amāverēint  erit  erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE. 1

PRESENT.

amēm  amēmus  amēr  amēmur
amēs  amētis  amēris, or-re  amēmini
amēt  amēnt  amētur  amēntur

IMPERFECT.

amărem  amăremus  amărer  amăremur
amăreś  amăreśitis  amăreśis, or-re  amăreśmini
amăreť  amăreṇt  amăreṇtur

PERFECT.

amāverēm  amāverēimus  ēsim  ēsimus
amāverēis  amāverēitis  ēsīs  ēsītis  ēsītī
amāverēit  amāverēint  ēsit  ēsint

PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem  amāvissemus  essēm  essēmus
amāvisseś  amāvisseśitis  essēs  essētis
amāvisset  amāvissent  essēt  essent

1 See p. 26, note.
FIRST CONJUGATION.

IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE. PASSIVE VOICE.

Present.

amā, love thou. amāre, be thou loved.
amāte, love ye. amāmini, be ye loved.

Future.

amātō, thou shalt love. amātor, thou shalt be loved.
amātō, he shall love. amātor, he shall be loved.
amātōte, you shall love. amantor, they shall be loved.
amātō, they shall love.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. amāre, to love. amāri, to be loved.
Perf. amāvisse, to have loved. amātus esse, to have been loved.
Fut. amātūrus esse, to be about to love. amātum īri, to be about to be loved.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. amāns, -antis, loving.
Fut. amātūrus, -a, -um, about to love.

GERUND.

G. amāndī, of loving.
D. amāndō, for loving.
Ac. amāndum, loving.
Ab. amāndō, by loving.

SUPINE.

Ac. amātum, to love. Ab. amātū, to love, to be loved.

1 Observe that the Latin has neither a perfect active nor a present passive participle.

2 Gerundive, sometimes less correctly called future passive participle.
CHAPTER XI. 1.
FIRST CONJUGATION.

87. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of amō.1

88. EXERCISES.

II. 1. He loves, he is loved. 2. He will love, he will be loved. 3. They were loved, they were loving. 4. I shall love, I shall be loved. 5. You (sing.) love, you are loved. 6. They loved, they were loving, they will love. 7. You (plur.) are loving, you were loving, you will be loving. 8. Love (sing.), be loved. 9. To be loved, to love.

2.

89. EXERCISES.
Laudō, praise; portō, carry; superō, conquer.

II. 1. Thou praisest, you carry, he conquers. 2. He is praised, they are carried, they will be conquered. 3. I praise, I was carrying, I shall conquer. 4. Thou art praised, thou

1 Notice how frequently the letter r marks a form as passive. 2 Where is it absent in the first three tenses?
art carried, thou art conquered. 5. Praise (thou), carry, conquer. 6. He will be conquered, he was praised, it is carried. 7. To conquer, to be carried, to be praised. 8. Do we carry? are we conquered? are we praised? 9. I am not carried, he was not conquered, they are not praised. 10. Thou wilt praise, he will be praised, they were carried.

90. Examine the following sentences:—

1. Agricola à rēgīnā laudātur, the farmer is praised by the queen.
2. Agricola rēgīnae verbīs laudātur, the farmer is praised by the words of the queen.
3. Servī gladiīs armātur, the slaves are being armed with swords.

On the first example see 61 and 62. In the second and third, observe that there is no ā or ab used with verbīs and gladiīs.

These ablative, verbīs and gladiīs, answer the questions by what? with what? by means of what? The ablative thus used is called the Ablative of Means or Instrument.

91. Rule of Syntax.—Means and Instrument are expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

92. Exercises.


II. 1. Sing, good boy. 2. Many goddesses were loved by the Greeks. 3. The boy will put the doves to flight.

1 Before words beginning with ā use ab, not ā. 2 Predicate accusative. 3 Predicate nominative. See 47.
4. The doves will be put to flight by the boy. 5. We shall invite friends and enemies. 6. Friends and enemies will be invited. 7. The Romans were not loved by the Greeks. 8. You will be summoned by a golden\(^1\) trumpet. 9. The slaves will be armed with javelins. 10. The black horse was wounded by a spear.

93. EXERCISES.


II. 1. While the man was working, the boy was singing. 2. While the master is being refreshed with sleep, the servant is watching. 3. Pleasant sleep refreshes the weary boy. 4. By pleasant sleep the boy will be refreshed. 5. A high wall is being built by the townsmen. 6. A famous Roman was called the Sword\(^3\) of Italy. 7. They called a famous Roman the Sword\(^4\) of Italy. 8. The tired farmer is refreshed by food and sleep.\(^5\) 9. We will walk in the streets of the town, while the farmers are working\(^6\) in the fields. 10. Sing, O blind poet, while we toil.

\(^1\) Golden, aureā or ex mūrō. The material of which a thing is made is expressed in Latin either by an adjective or by ĕ (ex) with the ablative. How is it in English?  
\(^2\) Compare, for order, 77. I. 5, and 69. I. 10, and note.  
\(^3\) Sword, in the nominative case, just as if was took the place of was called. See 92. I. 6, and note.  
\(^4\) Sword, in the accusative case. See 92. I. 5, and note.  
\(^5\) Cf. 5 and 6 in I.  
\(^6\) Imitate 4 in I.
94. Vocabularv.

aedificō, 1, build.
ambulō, 1, walk.
armō, 1, arm.
cantō, 1, sing.
fugō, 1, put to flight.
invitō, 1, invite, summon.
labōrō, 1, work, toil.
laudō, 1, praise.
nōminō, 1, name, call.
portō, 1, carry.
recreō, 1, refresh.
superō, 1, surpass, conquer.
vigilō, 1, watch.
vulnerō, 1, wound.

aqua,1-ae, f., water.
aureus, -a, -um, adj., golden.
caecus, -a, -um, adj., blind.
dum, adv., while.
ē (ex), prep. w. abl. out of, from.
frigidus, -a, -um, adj., cold.
gladius, -i, m., sword (79).
Homerus, -i, m., Homer.
Italia, -ae, f., Italy.
murus, -i, m., wall.
oppidānus, -i, m., townsman.
piger, -gra, -grum, adj., lazy.
Rōma, -ae, f., Rome.
Rōmānus, -i, m., a Roman.

95. Colloquium.

Pater et Filiolus.
Father and little son.

P. Quae, mi filiule, in pēnsō hodiernō tractābantur?

F. Tractābantur cāsus ablatīvus atque verbum amō.

P. Quid signīficat Anglice verbum amō?

F. Amō signīficat “love.”

P. Dē ablātīvō quoque mihi nārrā.

F. Rēgulam dē ablātīvō tibi nārrābo.

P. Rēgulamne tibi dabat magister?

F. Certē, rēgulam dē ablātīvō īnstrumentī. Cum ablā-
tīvō īnstrumentī nunquam pōnitur praepositō; ante ablātī-
vum agentis semper pōnitur praepositō ā vel ab.

P. Optimum, mi puer; tibi erit mālum rubrum.

1 Words are sometimes purposely repeated in the vocabularies.
CHAPTER XII. 1.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

96. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of amō.

97. The compound tenses are formed by combining forms of the verb sum with the perfect passive participle. The participle (declined like bonus) agrees in gender and number with the subject: amāta est, she was loved; amāти sunt, they were loved.

98. EXERCISES.


II. 1. You loved, you have been loved. 2. You had loved, you had been loved. 3. You will have loved, you will have been loved. 4. He has loved, he has been loved. 5. We had loved, we had been loved. 6. To have been loved, to have loved.

99. EXERCISES.


II. 1. They have carried, we have been praised, you have been conquered. 2. Have I praised? have you been carried? had they conquered? 3. We had been carried, I shall have
praised, they will have been conquered. 4. You had not carried, thou hadst not praised, thou hadst not been conquered. 5. To have been conquered, to have praised, to have carried. 6. I had praised, I had been conquered, I (fem.) had been carried. 7. Has it not been praised? will it not have been carried? have they not been conquered? 8. We (fem.) had been carried, thou wilt have praised, he conquered. 9. They praised, you carried, we conquered. 10. I was praised, thou wast conquered, it was carried.

3

100. In Latin, the words for my, thy, your, our, his, her, its, and their, are very often omitted when they are not emphatic. Accordingly, in the exercises to be turned into Latin, for the present, leave these words untranslated.

101. EXERCISES.


Read again the explanations and rules on pp. 20, 21, and 36.

II. 1. An eagle changed the fortune of the battle. 2. We shall witness a battle on the broad river. 3. Many good men will have been blamed by their enemies. 4. The boys will have recited to their master. 5. The land in Italy has been ploughed with iron ploughs. 6. The master freed his pupils from their hard tasks (abl.). 7. The goddess Minerva has been praised by many poets. 8. The victories of famous men have been sung by the poets. 9. The tyrant armed a great number of slaves with swords.
102. **Vocabulary.**

- *arō*, 1, *plough.*
- *liberō*, 1, *free, set free.*
- *mūtō*, 1, *change.*
- *recitō*, 1, *read aloud, recite.*
- *spectō*, 1, *look at, witness.*
- *superō*, 1, *surpass, conquer.*
- *vituperō*, 1, *blame, censure.*
- *ēgregius*, -a, -um, adj., *excellent.*
- *ferreus*, -a, -um, adj., *of iron, iron.*
- *fortūna*, -ae, f., *fortune.*
- *numerus*, -i, m., *number.*
- *pēnsūm*, -i, n., *task, lesson.*
- *pūgna*, -ae, f., *battle.*
- *scūtum*, -i, n., *shield.*
- *terra*, -ae, f., *earth, land.*
- *tyrannus*, -i, m., *tyrant.*
- *victūra*, -ae, f., *victory.*

---

**CHAPTER XIII. 1.**

**THIRD DECLENSION.**

103. The stem ends in a consonant or in *i.*

104. Consonant stems are named, according to their final letter, *mute stems, liquid stems, sibilant stems.* See 3.

**Mute Stems.**

105. **Paradigms.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem prīnci-.</td>
<td>St. rēg-.</td>
<td>St. jūdic-.</td>
<td>St. aetāt-.</td>
<td>St. capit-.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.V. prīnceps</th>
<th>rēx</th>
<th>jūdex</th>
<th>aetās</th>
<th>caput</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. principis</td>
<td>rēgis</td>
<td>jūdicis</td>
<td>aetātis</td>
<td>capitās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. principī</td>
<td>rēgī</td>
<td>jūdicī</td>
<td>aetātī</td>
<td>capitī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. principem</td>
<td>rēgem</td>
<td>jūdicem</td>
<td>aetātem</td>
<td>capitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. prīncipe</td>
<td>rēge</td>
<td>jūdīce</td>
<td>aetāte</td>
<td>capitē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.V. prīncipēs</th>
<th>rēgēs</th>
<th>jūdicēs</th>
<th>aetātēs</th>
<th>capitā</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. principum</td>
<td>rēgum</td>
<td>jūdicum</td>
<td>aetātum</td>
<td>capitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. principibus</td>
<td>rēgibus</td>
<td>jūdicibus</td>
<td>aetātibus</td>
<td>capitibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. prīncipēs</td>
<td>rēgēs</td>
<td>jūdicēs</td>
<td>aetātēs</td>
<td>capitā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. prīncipibus</td>
<td>rēgibus</td>
<td>jūdicibus</td>
<td>aetātibus</td>
<td>capitibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### THIRD DECLENSION.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pēs, m., foot.</th>
<th>Milēs, m., soldier.</th>
<th>Terminiations.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>St. ped-</td>
<td>St. milit-</td>
<td><strong>MASC. &amp; FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SINGULAR.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.V. pēs</td>
<td>milēs</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. pedēs</td>
<td>militēs</td>
<td>ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. pedī</td>
<td>militī</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. pedem</td>
<td>militēm</td>
<td>um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. pedē</td>
<td>militē</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PLURAL.</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th><strong>NEUTER.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. pedēs</td>
<td>militēs</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. pedum</td>
<td>militum</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. pedibus</td>
<td>militibus</td>
<td>um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. pedēs</td>
<td>militēs</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. pedibus</td>
<td>militibus</td>
<td>ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

106. Observe that the vowel before the final consonant of the stem is not always the same in the nominative as in the other cases.

107. Consonant stems may be found by dropping the termination of the genitive singular. But there are some exceptions.

108. Decline grex, poëma, servitūs. Decline together lapis asper, fidus comēs, and milēs aeger. For the nouns, see 110.

### EXERCISES.


II. 1. The king has changed the fortune of the war. 2. The fortune of the war was changed by the king. 3. The

---

1 *from care*. See 101. II. 6. 2 The subject.
soldiers will free the king. 4. The king will be freed by the soldiers. 5. The king had armed the soldiers with shields and spears. 6. Dædalus fitted wings to his son. 7. Wings were fitted to his son by Dædalus. 8. We shall read aloud the poems of Homer. 9. The girl sings for the weary soldier and is praised.

110. **VOCABULARY.**
comēs, -itis, m. & f., companion. servītūs, -ūtis, f., slavery.
equēs, -itis, m., horseman. voluptās, -ātis, f., pleasure.
grex, gregis, m., flock, herd. aptō, l, fit.
lapis, -idis, m., stone. Daedalus, -i, m., Dædalus, builder of the Labyrinth.
milēs, -itis, m., soldier. filius, -i, m., son (79).
pēs, pēdis, m., foot. vicīnus, -a, -um, adj., neighboring.
poēma, -ātis, n., poem.  
rēx, rēgis, m., king.

3.

111. **COLLOQUIUM.**

**Frāter et Sorōrcula.**

brother  
little sister

S. Quid hodie narrāvit magister in scholā? to-day school

F. Narrāvit dē Ícarō, Dædālī filīō.  

S. Mihi quoque dē Ícarō Latīnē narrā. Fuitne Ícarus me ãlsō in Latin puer malus?

F. Minimē malus sed miserrimus. Habēbat ālās; ālās cērā not unfortunate wings wax 
aptāverat Dædālus; Ícarus ēvolāvit et cērā sōle liquefacta flew away sun was melted 
est. Tum ...

then

S. Tum ... quid?

F. Mihi nōn sunt verba Latīnā. Itaque haesitō.  

words that is why hesitate

S. Ergō narrā Angličē. Nam lingvum Anglicam intelleggō.  

well, then language understand

F. Minimē. Latīnē tibi narrō, nōn Angličē.  

by no means
CHAPTER XIV.
SECOND CONJUGATION.

112.  

E-VERBS.

Moneō (stem monē), advise.
Principal Parts: moneō, monère, monuī, monitum.

ACTIVE.  

INDEFINITE PRESENT.

I advise, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monēo</th>
<th>Monēmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monēs</td>
<td>Monētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēt</td>
<td>Monēnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I am advised, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monēor</th>
<th>Monēmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monēris, or -re</td>
<td>Monēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monētur</td>
<td>Monēntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERFECT.

I was advising, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monēbam</th>
<th>Monēbāmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monēbās</td>
<td>Monēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēbat</td>
<td>Monēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FUTURE.

I shall advise, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monēbō</th>
<th>Monēbimus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monēbis</td>
<td>Monēbitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēbit</td>
<td>Monēbunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PERFECT.

I have advised, I advised, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monuī</th>
<th>Monuimus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monuistī</td>
<td>Monuistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuit</td>
<td>Monuērunt, or -re</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I have been (was) advised, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sum</th>
<th>Sumus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitūs</td>
<td>Monitī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moniūt</td>
<td>Moniūt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERFECT.

I was advised, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monēbar</th>
<th>Monēbāmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monēbāris, or -re</td>
<td>Monēbāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēbātur</td>
<td>Monēbantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I shall be advised, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monēbōr</th>
<th>Monēbimur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monēbēris, or -re</td>
<td>Monēbimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēbītur</td>
<td>Monēbuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monuēram</th>
<th>Monuērāmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monuērās</td>
<td>Monuērātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuērat</td>
<td>Monuērant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I had been advised, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Erām</th>
<th>Erāmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Erās</td>
<td>Erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erat</td>
<td>Erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Active

#### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Form</th>
<th>Future Perfect Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuerō</td>
<td>monuerimus</td>
<td>erō erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monueritis</td>
<td>monitus eris monitī eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
<td>erit erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Form</th>
<th>Present Subjunctive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneam</td>
<td>moneāmus</td>
<td>monear moneāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēas</td>
<td>moneātis</td>
<td>moneāris or-re moneāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēat</td>
<td>moneāunt</td>
<td>moneātur moneāntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Imperfect Form</th>
<th>Imperfect Subjunctive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monērem</td>
<td>monēremus</td>
<td>monēer monēremur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monērēs</td>
<td>monērētis</td>
<td>monērēris or-re monērēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēret</td>
<td>monērent</td>
<td>monērētur monērentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Perfect Form</th>
<th>Perfect Subjunctive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuerim</td>
<td>monuerimus</td>
<td>sim simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monueritis</td>
<td>monitus sīs monitī sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
<td>sit sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Pluperfect Form</th>
<th>Pluperfect Subjunctive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuissem</td>
<td>monuissemus</td>
<td>essem essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuisseś</td>
<td>monuissetis</td>
<td>monitus essēs monitī essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuisset</td>
<td>monuissent</td>
<td>esset essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Imperative Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monē</td>
<td>advise thou.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēte</td>
<td>advise ye.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Future Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monētō</td>
<td>thou shalt advise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētō</td>
<td>he shall advise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētōte</td>
<td>you shall advise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monento</td>
<td>they shall advise.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Passive

#### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Future Perfect Form</th>
<th>Present Subjunctive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuerō</td>
<td>monuerimus</td>
<td>erō erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monueritis</td>
<td>monitus eris monitī eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
<td>erit erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Form</th>
<th>Present Subjunctive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneām</td>
<td>moneāmus</td>
<td>moneār moneāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneās</td>
<td>moneātis</td>
<td>moneāris or-re moneāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneāt</td>
<td>moneāunt</td>
<td>moneātur moneāntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Imperfect Form</th>
<th>Imperfect Subjunctive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneārem</td>
<td>moneāremus</td>
<td>moneāer moneāremur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneārēs</td>
<td>moneārētis</td>
<td>moneārēris or-re moneārēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneāret</td>
<td>moneārent</td>
<td>moneārētur moneārentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Perfect Form</th>
<th>Perfect Subjunctive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneārem</td>
<td>moneāremus</td>
<td>sim simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneārēs</td>
<td>moneārētis</td>
<td>monitus sīs monitī sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneāret</td>
<td>moneārent</td>
<td>sit sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Pluperfect Form</th>
<th>Pluperfect Subjunctive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneāssem</td>
<td>moneāssēmus</td>
<td>essēm essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneāssēś</td>
<td>moneāssētis</td>
<td>monitus essēs monitī essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneāssēt</td>
<td>moneāssent</td>
<td>essēt essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Imperative Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mone</td>
<td>be thou advised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monemini</td>
<td>be ye advised.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Future Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monētor</td>
<td>thou shalt be advised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētor</td>
<td>he shall be advised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētōte</td>
<td>you shall be advised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monento</td>
<td>they shall be advised.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.
Pres. monēre, to advise.
Perf. monēisse, to have advised.
Fut. monēturus esse, to be about to advise.

INFINITIVE.
monēri, to be advised.
monēitus esse, to have been advised.
monēturum iti, to be about to be advised.

PARTICIPLE.
Pres. monēns, -entis, advising.
Fut. monēturus, -a, -um, about to advise.

GER. monēndus, -a, -um, to be advised.
Perf. monēitus, -a, -um, having been advised.

GERUND.
G. monēndī, of advising.
D. monēndō, for advising.
Ac. monēndum, advising.
Ab. monēndō, by advising.

SUPINE.
Ac. monētum, to advise.
Ab. monētū, to advise, to be advised.

CHAPTER XV. 1.
SECOND CONJUGATION.

113. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of moneō.

114. EXERCISES.

II. 1. You are advising, you will be advised, you were advised. 2. Advise ye, he ye advised. 3. We do advise,
we are advising, we shall be advising. 4. We were advising, we were advised. 5. They are advised, they advised, they were advising. 6. They will advise, they will be advised.

2.

115.

EXERCISES.

Habeō, have, or hold; déleō,1 destroy; terreō, frighten.


II. 1. We are held, they will be destroyed, he was frightened.—2. I frighten, thou hast (you have), he destroys. 3. To have, to destroy, to be frightened. —4. Is he frightened? are they destroyed? were you held? 5. Destroy (thou), have (ye), frighten (ye). —6. Have we not? does he not frighten? did they not destroy? 7. You will be frightened, it is held, we were frightened. 8. I was holding, he was destroying, you were frightening. 9. I shall destroy, we shall frighten, they have.

3.

116.

EXERCISES.

Before translating the following exercises, review the tables of declensions and terminations, pp. 41 and 42.

I. 1. Poenam merēbis, si memoriam nōn exercēbis.3

---

1 For principal parts of déleō, see vocabulary, 119.
2 The present, which denotes continued action, means it is being (destroyed); the imperfect, he was being (frightened).
3 Translate as if it were the present tense; but in Latin the future is necessary, because future time is meant. Cf. 93. I. 4. Observe the difference between the Latin and English idioms.

VII. 1. The tyrant is restrained. 2. The water of the river was increased. 3. The leader will have a statue. 4. The faithful comrade advises his friend. 5. The friend is advised by his faithful companion. 6. Lazy slaves fear a hard master. 7. A hard master is feared by lazy slaves. 8. Italy is the land of famous poets. 9. The soldiers will not be terrified by dangers. 10. The boy remembered the master’s words.

117. Malōs (I. 8), bad men, and multa (I. 10), many things, are examples of the frequent use in Latin of an adjective without a noun. Compare, in English, the good, the wise.

4.

118. EXERCISES.


II. 1. In ancient states there were many slaves. 2. Why had the ancient Romans many slaves? 3. We saw the great number of horsemen in the road and were frightened. 4. Roman boys were often taught by Greek slaves. 5. Greek slaves often taught Roman boys. 6. The horsemen were trained by the king’s son. 7. Many horses and horsemen are seen in the town. 8. The chief will deserve a great victory.

1 Rēx, in apposition with Cypērus. See 137. 2 names.
SECOND CONJUGATION.

119. VOCABULARY.

cooseō, 2, -uī, -itum, check, restrain.
exerceō, 2, -uī, -itum, train, exercise.
habeō, 2, -uī, -itum, have, hold.
merceō, 2, -uī, -itum, deserve, merit.
prohibeō, 2, -uī, -itum, prevent, keep off.
terreō, 2, -uī, -itum, frighten.
timeō, 2, -uī, —, fear.

augēō, 2, auxī,1 auctum, increase.
dēleō, 2, -ēvi,2 -ētum, destroy.
doceō, 2, -uī, doctum,3 teach.
teneō, 2, -uī, tentum,4 keep, hold.
video, 2, vidi,5 visum, see; passive, seem.

antiquus, -a, -um, adj., old, ancient.
civitās, -ātis, f., state.
cūr, adv., why?
Cyrrus, -i, m., Cyrus.
dux, ducis, m. & f., leader, general.
fidus, -a, -um, adj., faithful.
memoria, -ae, f., memory.
memoriā teneō, remember.
periculum, -i, n., danger.
poea, -ae, f., punishment.
quīd, interrog. pron., what?
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman (94).
saepe, adv., often.
si, conj., if.
studium, -i, n., zeal, study.
templum, -i, n., temple.

CHAPTER XVI. 1.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

120. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of monoēō.

121. EXERCISES.


II. 1. You have advised, you had advised, you will have advised. 2. They have been advised, they had been advised,

---

1 Auxī for aug-sī. See p. 1, n. 2.
2 Only fleō, weep, neō, spin, and the compounds of the obsolete dēleō, fill, are conjugated like dēleō, with the perfect in ēvi.
3 Observe, not docitum.
4 Observe, not tenitum.
5 Vidi. Perfect stem formed by lengthening the vowel of the present stem, vīd to vīd.
they will have been advised. 3. I had advised, I had been advised. 4. He has advised, he has been advised. 5. We have advised, we have been advised. 6. To have been advised, to have advised.

2.

122.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. They have had, they have frightened, they have destroyed. 2. I had had, I had been frightened, I had destroyed. 3. Have you had? had he destroyed? has he frightened? 4. We had not destroyed, they (fem.) had not been frightened, you had not destroyed. 5. We have had, we shall have destroyed, we had been frightened. 6. To have destroyed, to have been held, to have been frightened. 7. Have you been frightened? had they (neut.) been destroyed? has she had? 8. I have destroyed, I have not had, I shall not have been frightened. 9. They will have had, they will have been frightened, they (neut.) will have been destroyed. 10. Have you not had? did they not destroy? have you (fem.) not been frightened?

3.

123.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Rēx Rōmam obsēderat. 2. Rōma a rēge obsēssa erat. 3. Scriba cum (with) rēge sedēbat. 4. Īra ferōcem (fierce) animum virī mōvit. 5. Rēguli conjugī et liberīs
SECOND CONJUGATION. 51

alimenta praebuerunt Rōmāni. 6. Captūvī retentī sunt.

II. 1. The town was besieged by the general. 2. Why did the general besiege the town? 3. The king is sitting with his clerk. 4. The minds of the men were moved with anger. 5. Regulus was retained (as) a prisoner. 6. Regulus deserved great glory. 7. The new moon has been seen.
8. The commander’s daughter was a prisoner. 9. We wept because we were prisoners. 10. The town had been besieged by Pyrrhus.

4.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mīlitibus māgna præmia ā rēge praebita sunt.

II. 1. The king furnished food for his weary soldiers.
2. Elephants had frightened the horses of the Romans.
3. Have you increased the number of your friends?
4. Cæsar’s soldiers were besieged in the town. 5. The sword of the tyrant has restrained the judge. 6. War has destroyed many monuments of great men. 7. The camp had been moved away from the town. 8. We weep if our children are held in slavery. 9. Shall you remain in Italy?

1 Not passive.
2 Predicate nom.; see 47.
3 When a noun is limited both by an adjective and a genitive, the order often is: adjective, genitive, noun. Cf. 118. 1. 2 and 8.
125.

**VOCABULARY.**

- fleō, 2, flēvī, flētum, weep, be-wail.
- maneō, 2, mānsī, mānsum, re-main, await.
- moveō, 2, mōvī, mótmum, move.
- ob-sideō, 2, -sēdi, -sēssum, be-siege.
- praecēdo, 2, -uī, -itum, furnish.
- re-tīncō, 2, -tīnui, -tentum, keep back, retain.
- sedēō, 2, sēdi, sēssum, sit.
- alimentum, -i, n., food, support.
- animus, -i, m., mind.
- Caesar, -arīs, m., Cæsar. (134.)

- captivus, -ī, m., prisoner, captive.
- castra, -ōrum, (pl.) n., camp.
- conjunctus, conjugis, f., wife.
- elephantus, -ī, m., elephant.
- ira, -ae, f., anger.
- lūna, -ae, f., moon.
- novus, -a, -um, adj., new.
- nunciam, adv., never.
- praecium, -ī, n., reward.
- Pyrrhus, -ī, m., Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.
- quia, conj., because.
- Rōgulus, -ī, m., Regulus, a Roman.
- scriba, -ae, m., clerk. (11. 1.)

5.

126.

**COLLOQUIUM.**

**PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.**

- P. Latīnē mihi interrogānti respondē sī possīs. Quae īnsula Graeciae est parva quidem sed clāra?

- D. Admodum clāra est Ithaca īnsula, ubi habitābat Ulixēs.

- P. Rēctē, mī puer, Ulixēs Ithacae rēx fuit et dux in bellō ēgregius. Quis cantāvit dē Ulixē ēgregiō?

- D. Homērus, poēta caecus, qui autem Ulixem nuncūm viderat.

- P. Tenēsne memoriā nōmen fidē servī Ulixis?

- D. Servus Ulixis fidus erat Eumæus.

1 See p. 49, note 5.

2 Also captīva, -ae, f.
CHAPTER XVII. 1.

REVIEW.

127. EXERCISES.


II. 1. We shall see the flocks in the fields. 2. The king was not frightened by the elephant. 3. Horses are frightened by elephants. 4. The townsmen were sitting on the wall. 5. The prisoners were wounded by the soldiers with their swords. 6. My boy, what are you looking at? 7. Do you not see the horsemen’s swords? 8. Do you remember the poems of the Roman poet? 9. The king’s sons were finding fault with fortune. 10. Why are the townsmen armed with swords?

128. Examine the two following groups of sentences:—

1. Iter ab Arare Helvētīī āverterant, the Helvetii had turned their course from the Arar.
2. Arāneās dēsicam dē pariete, I will brush down the cobwebs from the wall.
3. Hannibal ex Ītaliā excēssit, Hannibal withdrew from Italy.

1. Nōs cūrā liberābis, you will free us from care.
2. Oculīs sē prīvāvīt, he deprived himself of his sight (eyes).
3. Homo cibō caret, the man is in want of food.

129. The verbs have the general idea of separation; and in the first group the ablative with a preposition, in the second the ablative

1 Vocative singular of meus, my.
alone, answers the question from what? of what? Observe further, that the verbs of the first group are compounds of ā, dē, ex, and the “separation” is literal, or physical; in the second group the “separation” is figurative, or less literal.

130. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Separation is expressed by the ablative with ā (ab), dē, ē (ex), in connection with verbs compounded with these prepositions, or by the ablative alone with simple verbs meaning to set free, deprive, or want.

2.

131. EXERCISES.


Before translating the following sentences, read over the explanations and rules on pp. 29, 21, and 36, and consider what expressions are equivalent to the Latin ablative of agent with ā or ab, the ablative of means, and the ablative of separation.

II. 1: They deprived the sick man of water. 2: The state was freed from the tyrant by Brutus. 3: The Italians were taught by Saturn. 4: The leader adorned the town with statues. 5: The horsemen are in want of swords and horses. 6: Corinth was robbed of many statues by a Roman general. 7: The goddess will keep off the Romans

1 With other verbs than those indicated in 129 and 130, of similar meaning, the preposition is sometimes used and sometimes omitted.

2 Observe the two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing, with dōcēō.
from her temple. 8. The town was destroyed by the plans of the general. 9. Will not the Romans be kept off from the temple? 10. They thrust forth the leaders from the town. 11. The leaders are hustled out of town.

### 132.

**VOCABULARY.**

agri cultura, -ae, f., agriculture.
avārus, -a, -um, adj., greedy.
archē, 2, -ui, -tum, keep off.
Brātus, -i, m., Brutus, a Roman.
careō, 2, -ui, -itum, want, lack.
causa, -ae, r., cause.
Corinthus, -i, r., Corinth (11.4).
custōs, -ōdis, m. & r., keeper.
Épirus, -i, r., Épirus (11.4).

exturbō, 1, thrust out.
Italus, -i, m., an Italian.
Līber, -eri, m., Bacchus, god of wine.
meus, -a, -um, poss. adj., my, mine.
ōrnō, 1, adorn.
prīvō, 1, deprive. [agriculture.
Sāturnus, -i, m., Saturn, god of spoliō, 1, rob, despoil.
tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj., thy, your

### 133.

**COLLOQUIUM.**

**PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.**

P. Die mihi, puer, elephantōsne alīquandō vidisti?

D. Certē, praeceptor, elephantōs māgnōs et parvōs vidi.

P. In agrisne?

D. Minimē vērō; in circō et interdum in viūs.

P. Quis rēx clārus elephantōrum auxiliō pūgnabat?

D. Pyrrhus, rēx Épirī, ita pūgnabat.

P. Nōnne elephantū equōs Rōmānōrum terrēbant?

D. Terrēbant. Mīlitēs quoque terrēbantur.

P. Superāvitne Pyrrhus Rōmānōs?

D. Saepe superāvit.

P. Quibus armīs pūgnant elephantī?

D. Dentibus, proboscide, pedibus, capite pūgnant.
### Liquid Stems

#### PARADIGMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stems</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cōnsul, m., consul.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pater, m., father.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pāstor, m., shepherd.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>St. cōnsul-</strong></td>
<td><strong>St. patr-</strong></td>
<td><strong>St. pāstör-</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.V. cōnsul</td>
<td>pater</td>
<td>pāstor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cōnsulis</td>
<td>patris</td>
<td>pāstöris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cōnsulī</td>
<td>patrī</td>
<td>pāstōrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. cōnsulem</td>
<td>patrem</td>
<td>pāstōrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. cōnsule</td>
<td>patre</td>
<td>pāstōre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Imāgō, r., image.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Nōmen, n., name.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>St. imāgin-</strong></td>
<td><strong>St. nōmin-</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stems</th>
<th>Terminations.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. imāgō</td>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. imāginis</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. imāginī</td>
<td>ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. imāginem</td>
<td>em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. imāginē</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stems</th>
<th>Terminations.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. imāginēs</td>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. imāginum</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. imāginibus</td>
<td>ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. imāginēs</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. imāginibus</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
135. Examine the following:—
1. Hieme et aestäte, in winter and summer.
2. Sōlis occasū,¹ at the setting of the sun.
3. Prima luce, at daybreak (first light).
4. His vigintī annīs, within these twenty years.

It will be seen that the above phrases are expressions of time, and answer the question when? or, within what time?

136. Rule of Syntax.—Time when is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; time within which, by the ablative alone, or by the ablative with in.

2.

137. Exercises.

II. 1. Europe has no⁴ lions. 2. A slave had a great lion. 3. The name of the slave was Androclus. 4. There are many lions in Africa. 5. The friend of my brothers has seen a lion. 6. A lion has been seen by my father and my brother. 7. The shouts of the soldiers scared the men in the town. 8. The defenders of the town were scared by the shouts of the men. 9. Why are many men miserable in time⁵ of war? 10. Do we not see by the sun’s light? 11. At daybreak they saw Hannibal’s horsemen.

¹ Ablative of the fourth declension. See 245. ² All. ³ Children. See 60. ⁴ Not. ⁵ Tempore.
138. **VOCABULARY.**

clāmor, -ōris, m., shout.

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m., defender.

fortitūdō, -inis, f., bravery.

frāter, -ōris, m., brother.

Hannibal, -ālis, m., Hannibal, a Carthaginian general.

homo, -inis, m., man.

imperātor, -ōris, m., general.

lūmen, -inis, n., light.

sōl, sōlis, m. (no gen. pl.), sun.

terror, -ōris, m., terror.

timor, -ōris, m., fear.

Āfrica, -ae, f., Africa.

Androclus, -i, m., Androclus.

annus, -i, m., year.

creō, i, elect, choose.

Europā, -ae, f., Europe.

Horātius, -i, m., Horace, a Roman poet (79).

impleō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum, fīl. fill.

juventūs, -ūtis, f., youth.

semper, adv., always.

voluptās, -ātis, f., pleasure.

homo, man, as distinguished from lower animals; general word for man, mankind.

vir (60), man, as distinguished from woman; man in an honorable sense, hero.

3.

139. **COLLOQUIUM.**

**MAGISTER ET DISCIPULUS.**

M. Quae, mi puér, sunt in pēnsō hōdiernō?

D. Multa sunt in pēnsō, ut nōmina, adjectīva, dēclīnāō.

M. Quot genera sunt nōminibus Latīnīs?

D. Genera sunt tria: masculīnum, fēminīnum, neutrum.

M. Dē quibus nōminibus est rēgula prīma?

D. Prīma rēgula est dē nōminibus generis masculīnī. Secunda rēgula est dē nōminibus generis fēminīnī.

M. Verbōrum quot sunt conjugātiōnēs?

D. Quattuor sunt conjugātiōnēs, dēclīnātiōnēs autem quīnque.
CHAPTER XIX. 1.
THIRD DECLENSION.

SIBILANT STEMS.¹

140. PARADIGMS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>St. mōs-</td>
<td>St. jūs-</td>
<td>St. opes-</td>
<td>St. corporis-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.V. mōs</th>
<th>jūs</th>
<th>opus</th>
<th>corpus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. mōris</td>
<td>jūris</td>
<td>operis</td>
<td>corporis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. mōrī</td>
<td>jūrī</td>
<td>operī</td>
<td>corporī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. mōrem</td>
<td>jūs</td>
<td>opus</td>
<td>corpus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. mōre</td>
<td>jūre</td>
<td>opera</td>
<td>corporē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.V. mōrēs</th>
<th>jūra</th>
<th>opera</th>
<th>corpora</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. mōrum</td>
<td>jūrum</td>
<td>operum</td>
<td>corporum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. mōribus</td>
<td>jūribus</td>
<td>operibus</td>
<td>corporibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. mōrēs</td>
<td>jūra</td>
<td>opera</td>
<td>corpora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. mōribus</td>
<td>jūribus</td>
<td>operibus</td>
<td>corporibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

141. ADJECTIVE.

Vetus, old. Stem vetes-

SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>vetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. veteris</td>
<td>veteris</td>
<td>veterum</td>
<td>veterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. veterī</td>
<td>veterī</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. veterem</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>vetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. vetere</td>
<td>vetere</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

142. The above were originally sibilant stems, the s having been changed to r between two vowels. Compare eram for esam, erō for esō, p. 25. But for practical purposes they may be regarded as stems in r.

¹ For table of terminations, see 134.
143. EXERCISES.


II. 1. The statue of Minerva has been seen. 2. The statue of Minerva had often been praised. 3. The works of the Greeks were pleasing to the Romans. 4. Our pleasures have been increased by work and zeal. 5. What were seen in the temples of Greece? 6. In ancient times men saw statues of gods and goddesses. 7. Statues of gods and goddesses were seen by men in ancient times.

2.

144. Examine the following:—

1. Cum virtūte vīxit, he lived with virtue (virtuously).
2. Agricola agrum cum cūrā arat, the farmer ploughs his field with care (carefully).
3. Agricola agrum māgnā cum cūrā arat, the farmer ploughs his field with great care.
4. Summā vī proelium commīsērunt, they joined battle with the greatest violence.

Manner is usually expressed by adverbs: bene, well; libere, freely. So the phrases cum virtūte, cum cūrā, māgnā cum cūrā, and summā vī, plainly denote manner,—how a thing is done,—like adverbs of manner.

145. Rule of Syntax.—Manner is sometimes expressed by the ablative with cum; but if the ablative has an adjective, cum is often omitted.

1 Read again explanations and rule, p. 36.  
2 Quae = what things.
THIRD DECLENSION.

146. EXERCISES.

II. 1. They look at the lion with great fear. 2. If he blames (is blaming) the boy angrily,4 he deserves punishment. 3. Dāedalus had fitted wings to Icarus with care. 4. They remember the words of the good judge with joy. 5. The words of the good judge will be carefully4 remembered. 6. How many works of the Romans time has not destroyed!

147. VOCABULARY.

Cerēs, -eris, r., Ceres, goddess of agriculture.

flōs, flōris, m., flower.

pulvis, -eris, m., dust.

tempus, -oris, n., time.

aestās, -ātis, r., summer.

cum, prep. w. abl., with.

cūra, -ae, r., care.

gaudium, -i, n., joy.

Icarus, -i, m., Icarus.

ira, -ae, r., anger.

libenter, adv., gladly, with pleasure.

molestus, -a, -um, adj., troublesome.

quam, adv., how, than.

sacer, -era, -erum, adj., sacred.

Sicilia, -ae, r., Sicily.

3.

148. COLLOQUIUM.

Duo Puerī.

Hodiē dūrum pēnsum habuī.

Studuistine cum cūrā et diligentia?

did you study diligence

Certiē cum diligentia, nōn cum voīntāte studai.

1 Notice that in the fields = in agrīs; in the time = tempore.

2 See p. 47, note 3.

3 Why would it be wrong to write in tempore?

4 Compare 144. 1.
Cūr nōn cum volupštāte studuisti? Eratne magister mōrōsus an pēnsum longum?

Mehercule! longum erat pēnsum neque memoriā tenēbam.

Aspice. Nōnne vidēs multa vocābula in vocābulāriō et ver-

bum mōneō et dēclātiōnis tertiae substantīva et adjectīva?

Heu amīcum miserum, quam studēs!

---

CHAPTER XX. 1.

THIRD DECLENSION.

STEMS IN i.

149.

PARADIGMS.

Hostis, m. & f., enemy.

Nūbēs, r., cloud.

Turris, r., tower.

Īgnis, m., fire.

St. hosti-

St. nūbi-

St. turri-

St. īgni-

SINGULAR.

N.V. hostis nūbēs turris īgnis

G. hostis nūbis turris īgnis

D. hostī nūbī turri īgni

Ac. hostēm nūbēm turrim,em ignem

Ab. hostē nūbe turri, e īgni, e

PLURAL.

N.V. hostēs nūbēs turrēs ignēs

G. hostium nūbium turrium ignium

D. hostibus nūbibus turribus ignibus

Ac. hostēs, īs nūbēs, īs turrēs, īs ignēs, īs

Ab. hostibus nūbibus turribus ignibus
### THIRD DECLENSION.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal, n.,</th>
<th>Mare, n.,</th>
<th>Calcar, n.,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>animal.</em></td>
<td><em>sea.</em></td>
<td><em>spur.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. animāli-</td>
<td>St. mari-</td>
<td>St. calcāri-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.V. animal</th>
<th>G. animālis</th>
<th>D. animālī</th>
<th>Ac. animal</th>
<th>Ab. animālī</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>mare</em></td>
<td><em>maris</em></td>
<td><em>marī</em></td>
<td><em>mare</em></td>
<td><em>marī</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>calcar</em></td>
<td><em>calcāris</em></td>
<td><em>calcāri</em></td>
<td><em>calcar</em></td>
<td><em>calcāri</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.V. animālia</th>
<th>G. animalium</th>
<th>D. animālibus</th>
<th>Ac. animālia</th>
<th>Ab. animālibus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>maria</em></td>
<td><em>marium</em></td>
<td><em>maribus</em></td>
<td><em>maria</em></td>
<td><em>maribus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>calcāria</em></td>
<td><em>calcārium</em></td>
<td><em>calcāribus</em></td>
<td><em>calcāria</em></td>
<td><em>calcāribus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### TERMINATIONS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASC. &amp; FEM.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is, ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>em, im</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e, ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### NEUTER.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>e or —</th>
<th>ia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>ium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ī</td>
<td>ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e or —</td>
<td>ia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ī</td>
<td>ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 150.

#### ADJECTIVES.

属 Acer, keen, eager. St. ācri-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. Acer</td>
<td><em>ācris</em></td>
<td><em>ācre</em></td>
<td><em>ācrēs</em></td>
<td><em>ācrēs</em></td>
<td><em>ācria</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. <em>ācris</em></td>
<td><em>ācris</em></td>
<td><em>ācris</em></td>
<td><em>ācrium</em></td>
<td><em>ācrium</em></td>
<td><em>ācrium</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. <em>ācri</em></td>
<td><em>ācri</em></td>
<td><em>ācri</em></td>
<td><em>ācribus</em></td>
<td><em>ācribus</em></td>
<td><em>ācribus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. <em>ācrem</em></td>
<td><em>ācrem</em></td>
<td><em>ācre</em></td>
<td><em>ācrēs, īs</em></td>
<td><em>ācrēs, īs</em></td>
<td><em>ācria</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. <em>ācri</em></td>
<td><em>ācri</em></td>
<td><em>ācri</em></td>
<td><em>ācribus</em></td>
<td><em>ācribus</em></td>
<td><em>ācribus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

属 Levis, light, nimble. St. levi-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. Levis</td>
<td><em>leve</em></td>
<td>levēs</td>
<td>levia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. Levis</td>
<td><em>levis</em></td>
<td><em>levium</em></td>
<td><em>levium</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. levī</td>
<td><em>levī</em></td>
<td><em>levibus</em></td>
<td><em>levibus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. levem</td>
<td><em>leve</em></td>
<td><em>levēs, īs</em></td>
<td><em>levia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. levī</td>
<td><em>levī</em></td>
<td><em>levibus</em></td>
<td><em>levibus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THIRD DECLENSION.

Memor, mindful. St. memor-

SINGULAR. |   | PLURAL.
---|---|---
**m. & f.** | **neut.** | **memorēs**
N.V. memor | memor |
G. memoris | memoris | memorum
D. memorī | memorī | memoribus
Ac. memorēm | memor | memorēs, ēs
Ab. memorī | memorī | memoribus

151. An inspection of the tables shows:—

1. That the i of the stem is sometimes lost, and sometimes changed to e. It appears in the terminations im, is (acc. plur.), i (abl. sing.), ia, and ium.

2. That the ablative singular has in some nouns i, in some e, and in some i or e; in adjectives, always i.

3. That the genitive plural has ium, and the nominative and accusative plural neuter ia. Compare these endings with the nominative and genitive plural of consonant stems (105, 134, 140).

4. Memor has um in the genitive plural, masculine and feminine. It has no neuter plural. Like memor decline vigil, watchful, which has neuter plural vigilia, vigilium, etc.

152. To stems in ē belong:—

1. Nouns in is and ēs not increasing in the genitive.1
2. Neuters in e, al, and ar.
3. Adjectives of two terminations.
4. Adjectives of the third declension of three terminations.

153. Nouns in ēs (gen. is) are declined like nūbēs. Most nouns in is are declined like hostis. Canis, dog, has genitive plural canum.

154. The principal nouns declined like turris are: clāvis, key; nāvis, ship; puppis, stern of a ship; secūris, axe.

Like ignis are: annus, river; anguis, snake; avis, bird; civis, citizen; clāssis, fleet; collis, hill; finis, end; orbis, circle; postis, post. Sitis, thirst, has acc. in -im, abl. in -ī.

1 That is, having no more syllables than in the nominative.
155. Adjectives declined like ācer are called adjectives of three terminations; those declined like levīs, adjectives of two terminations; while those declined like vetus (141), audāx and prūdēns (164), are called adjectives of one termination.

156. Decline together nāvis longa, ship of war; vallis profunda, deep valley; Alpēs altae, high Alps. See 161.

2.

157. Paradigm illustrating opposition:—

N.V. Cicerō cōnsul, Cicero, the consul.
G. Cicerōnis cōnsulis, of Cicero, the consul.
D. Cicerōnī cōnsulī, to or for Cicero, the consul.
Ac. Cicerōnem cōnsulem, Cicero, the consul.
Ab. ā Cicerōne cōnsule, by Cicero, the consul.

158. Rule of Syntax.—An appositive is in the same case as the noun or pronoun which it qualifies.

159. Exercises.


II. 1. In the tower there were many men. 2. The towers of the ships were high. 3. From the high tower we saw the broad sea. 4. The broad sea was seen by men in the high tower. 5. The flight of the horsemen was seen by brave soldiers. 6. Robbers fear a brave man. 7. A brave man is feared by robbers. 8. On the shore they built a tower
for the king. 9. Numa, king of the Romans, changed the number of the months. 10. The number of the months was changed by Numa, a Roman king.

3.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. Polyphemus, son of Neptune, had a huge body. 2. Cyrus, the first king of the Persians, remembered all the names of his soldiers. 3. The names of all his soldiers were remembered by Cyrus, king of the Persians. 4. How many ships of the Gauls were driven off? 5. The number of fires in the town was great.

161.

VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, -ium, r., Alps.  
avis, -is, r., bird (154).  
fortis, -e, adj., brave.  
mēnsis, -is, m., month.  
mortālis, -e, adj., mortal.  
nāvis, -is, r., ship (154).  
nōbilis, -e, adj., noble.  
ominis, -e, adj., all, every.  
vallīs (or -ēs), -is, r., valley.  
vigil, -is, adj., watchful.

animus, -i, m., mind, soul.  
ēducō, 1, train, educate.  
ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild.  
fuga, -ae, r., flight.  
genus, -eris, n., kind, race.  
habitō, 1, dwell, inhabit.  
latrō, -onis, m., robber.  
litus, -oris, n., shore.  
multitūdō, -inis, r., multitude.  
Neptūnus, -i, m., Neptune, god of the sea.  
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., our, ours.

Numa, -ae, m., Numa, a Roman king.  
Persae, -ārum, m., the Persians.
Polyphemus, i. n., Polyphemus. sub-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, quot, adj. indecl., how many? (move from beneath) remove, drive rōbur, -ōris, n., strength. away. ruina, -ae, r., ruin. vitō, 1, avoid, shun.

4.

162.

FRATER ET SORÓRCULA.

S. Nārrā mihi, frāter, dē Polyphēmō; quis fuit et ubi habitābat?

F. Polyphēmus filius Neptūnī fuit et cum frātribus in īnsula habitābat.

S. Fuitne arātor et agrōs arābat?


S. Nauta igitur sine dubiō fuit, et maria nāvibus navigābat.

F. Errāvistī, mea sorōrcula, Polyphēmus fuit pāstor atque māgnōs ovium gregōs habēbat. Fuit autem ingentis corporis sheep moreover huge et ūnum tantum oculum habuit. Ulixēs dolōsus eī ūnum only oculum stūpite perforāvit. stake dug out

S. Ėheu! miserrimum Polyphēnum!

Oh dear! poor
CHAPTER XXI. 1.
THIRD DECLENSION.

MIXED STEM.\(^1\)

163. PARADIGMS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cliēns</td>
<td>clientis</td>
<td>clientī</td>
<td>clientem</td>
<td>cliente</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cliēns</td>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>urbis</td>
<td>urbem</td>
<td>urbe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>arx</td>
<td>arcis</td>
<td>arcem</td>
<td>arce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbis</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>arcī</td>
<td>em</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cliēnēs</td>
<td>clientium</td>
<td>clientibus</td>
<td>clientēs, īs</td>
<td>clientibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbēs</td>
<td>urbium</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
<td>urbēs, īs</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arcēs</td>
<td>arcium</td>
<td>arcibus</td>
<td>arcēs, īs</td>
<td>arcibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūs</td>
<td>ium</td>
<td>ībus</td>
<td>ēs, īs</td>
<td>ībus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

164. ADJECTIVES.

Audāx, bold; prūdēns, sagacious.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V.</td>
<td>audāx</td>
<td>prūdēns</td>
<td>prūdēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>audācis</td>
<td>prūdentis</td>
<td>prūdentis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>audācī</td>
<td>prūdentī</td>
<td>prūdentī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>audācem</td>
<td>prūdentem</td>
<td>prūdens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>audācī, e</td>
<td>prūdentī, e</td>
<td>prūdentī, e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audācēs</td>
<td>audācium</td>
<td>audācibus</td>
<td>audācēs, īs</td>
<td>audācibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audācia</td>
<td>prūdentēs</td>
<td>prūdentibus</td>
<td>prūdentēs, īs</td>
<td>prūdentibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prūdentia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) Usually classed as ī stems. See 166.
165. PARTICIPLE.

Amāns, loving.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. &amp; F.</td>
<td>NEUT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.V. amāns</td>
<td>amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. amantēs</td>
<td>amantēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. amantī</td>
<td>amantī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. amantēm</td>
<td>amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. amante, ē</td>
<td>amante, ē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

166. Note in the above tables:—

1. That the nouns are declined in the singular like consonant stems (105, 134, 140), and the adjectives also, except that, like i stems, they have an ablative in ī.

2. That the plural of both nouns and adjectives is like that of i stems (149, 150).

167. To the class of mixed stems belong:—

1. Nouns in ns and rs. But parēns has the genitive plural parentum.

2. Monosyllables in s and x following a consonant, together with nix, nivis, snow; nox, noctis, night; os, ossis, bone; mūs, māris, mouse.

3. Adjectives of one ending, with some exceptions, of which the most important are: adives, rich; pauper, poor; particeps, sharing; princeps, chief; and compounds of nouns that have consonant stems. These all have the genitive plural in um.

4. Present active participles.

168. RULES OF GENDER.—1. Nouns ending in ē, or, ēs, er, es (gen. ēdis, ētis), are masculine.

But nouns ending in ēō and ēō, of more than two syllables, together with abstract1 and collective2 nouns in ēō, are feminine.

2. Nouns ending in ēs, ēs not increasing in the genitive, is, x, and s following a consonant, are feminine.

---

1 Abstract nouns are such as denote a thought rather than a thing: ratio, method.
2 Collective nouns are such as in the singular imply a number of things or persons: legiō, legion.
3. Nouns ending in *a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur,* and *us,* are neuter.

There are many exceptions to these rules, which the learner should note as he advances.

169. Decline together *fons profundus,* deep spring; *hostis audax,* bold enemy; *magna pars,* great part. See 172.

2.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. There are mountains in Europe. 2. On the sides of the mountains are tall trees. 3. Many rivers have small sources. 4. Parts of the Alps are beautiful. 5. The Alps have deep valleys and high cliffs. 6. Wild beasts are seen on the sides of the Alps. 7. There you will see shepherds and sheep. 8. Brave soldiers do not fear dangers. 9. The fathers of the young men are soldiers. 10. We honor the brave soldier.

3.

EXERCISES.

III. 1. Men dwell in the deep valleys of the mountains. 2. In summer they have flocks on the mountains. 3. Why do men call the eagle the king\(^1\) of birds? 4. Do not keen hunters see the eagle from afar? 5. The enemy's ships plough the deep sea. 6. The robbers saw the ships with great terror.\(^2\) 7. Solon was the author of many good laws. 8. In ancient states there were free men and slaves. 9. The memory of the wise Solon has been honored.

172. VOCABULARY.

adultescens, -entis, m. & f., youth, young man.

fons, fontis, m., source, spring.
mons, montis, m., mountain.

pars, partis, f., part.
sapiens, -entis, adj., wise.

annis, -is, n., river (154).
arbor, -oris, f., tree.
auctor, -oris, m., author.

Belgae, -arum, m., the Belgians.

classeis, -is, f., fleet (154).
diligentia, -ae, f., diligence.

fera, -ae, f., wild beast.

honors, 1, honor.

hostis, -is, m. & f., enemy.

ibi, adv., there.

inter, prep. w. acc., between, among.

latus, -eris, n., side. Cf. latus, broad.

lex, legis, f., law.

longe, adv., afar, at a distance.

mos, moris, m., manner, custom.

nam, conj., for.

ovis, -is, f., sheep.

pastor, -oris, m., shepherd.

periculum, -i, n., danger, peril.

profundus, -a, -um, adj., deep.

regio, -onis, f., region.

regnum, 1, be king, rule, reign.

ruper, -is, f., rock, cliff.

silva, -ae, f., wood, forest.

Solon, -onis, m., Solon, an Athenian lawgiver.

suavis, -e, adj., sweet, pleasant.

venerator, -oris, m., hunter.

vulpes, -is, f., fox.

annis, a large, deep river; not the common prose word for river.

flumen (203), general word for river; flowing, as opposed to still water, as a lake or pond.

fluvis (84), not different from flumen, but much less used.

hostis, general word for enemy: a public enemy, enemy in war.

inimicus (78), a private or personal enemy; opposed to amicus.

\(^1\) Predicate accusative.\(^2\) See 144, 145.
4.

COLLOQUIUM.

173. Translate into Latin:—

FATHER AND SON.

F. Tell me (mihi) about Solon, if you please (si placet).

S. Solon was a wise Athenian (Athèniënsis); his (eius) laws were famous, and his memory will always be honored. He was the friend of poor men (pauperum). He saw many lands and many men. He did not fear Pisistratus the usurper (tyrannum).

F. Was Miltiades also (quoque) an Athenian?

S. Certainly; he overcame the Persians (Persās) in the battle of Marathon. He was a brave and skilful leader. He had a brave son.

———

CHAPTER XXII. 1.

REVIEW.

174. Decline together gladius ácer, sharp sword; cōnsilium útile, useful counsel; aquila celeris, swift eagle; animal vēlōx, fleet animal. See 179.

175. Examples of the locative case in the third declension are: Carthāginī, or Carthāgīne, at Carthage; rūrī, in the country.

176. Affix the proper terminations to the adjectives in the following, and translate:—

1. Equō celer-, equōrum vēlōc-, equīs vēlōc-.
2. Puella trāst-, puellae trāst-, puellam trāst-, puellārum prūdent-.
3. Gladīs ācr-, gladīōs ācr-, gladium ācr-.
4. Librō útil-, librōrum útil-, librum útil-.
5. Dōnum útil-, dōna útil-, dōnī útil-.
6. Servī fidēl-, servō fidēl-, servōs fidēl-, servīs fidēl-.

1 Of Marathon, Marathōnius, -a, -um.
177. EXERCISES.


II. 1. The soldiers have keen weapons. 2. I have a swift horse. 3. We praise brave men. 4. Do you like sweet food? 5. The lessons are not hard. 6. The plans of the commander are sagacious. 7. Life is short. 8. There are swift eagles in the mountains. 9. The king has bold sailors. 10. The wings of the swift eagle are long.

2.

178. EXERCISES.

Write out the whole of 177, I. in Latin, changing singulars to plurals and plurals to singulars. Thus, 4 will be virōs fortēs laudō.

Turn II. into Latin, first changing the sentences as directed above in regard to I.

179. VOCABULARY.

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., sharp, eager. fidēlis, -e, adj., faithful.
brevis, -e, adj., short. initium, -i, n., beginning.
celer, celeris, celere, adj., quick, tēlum, -i, n., weapon.
fleet, swift. tristis, -e, adj., sad.
difficilis, -e, adj., difficult, hard. utilis, -e, adj., useful.
equester, -tris, -tre, adj., equestrian. vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift, fleet.
vita, -ae, f., life.

celer, quick, with the added notion of eagerness or energy.
vēlōx, swift, sometimes implying nimbleness.
THIRD CONJUGATION.

CHAPTER XXIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

180. Ė-VERBS.

Regō (stem rege), rule.
Principal Parts: regō, regēre, rēxi, rēctum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I rule, etc.</td>
<td>I am ruled, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regō</td>
<td>reg imus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regīs</td>
<td>reg or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regīt</td>
<td>reg eris, or-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regunt</td>
<td>reg imīnī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPERFECT</th>
<th>I was ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was ruling, etc.</td>
<td>I was ruled, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg ēbam</td>
<td>reg ēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg ēbās</td>
<td>reg ēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg ēbat</td>
<td>reg ēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE</th>
<th>I shall rule, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I shall be ruled, etc.</td>
<td>I shall rule, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg ēmam</td>
<td>reg ēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg ēs</td>
<td>reg ētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg ēt</td>
<td>reg ētent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERFECT</th>
<th>I have been ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have ruled, etc.</td>
<td>I have been ruled, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxi</td>
<td>rēx imus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx istī</td>
<td>rēx istis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxit</td>
<td>rēx ērunt, or-re</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUPERFECT</th>
<th>I had been ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I had ruled, etc.</td>
<td>I had been ruled, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx eram</td>
<td>rēx erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx erās</td>
<td>rēx erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx erat</td>
<td>rēx erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Rēxi for reg·si. See p. 1, note 2.  2 Rēctum for reg·tum.
### ACTIVE.

**Future Perfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have ruled, etc.</th>
<th><strong>Passive.</strong> I shall have been ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēx erō</td>
<td>rēx erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx erēs</td>
<td>rēx erēitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx erit</td>
<td>rēx erint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUBJUNCTIVE.¹

**Present.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>reg am</th>
<th>reg āmus</th>
<th>reg ar</th>
<th>reg āmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reg ās</td>
<td>reg ātis</td>
<td>reg āris, or-re</td>
<td>reg āmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg at</td>
<td>reg ant</td>
<td>reg ātur</td>
<td>reg antur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>reg erēm</th>
<th>reg erēmus</th>
<th>reg erēr</th>
<th>reg erēmūr</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reg erēs</td>
<td>reg erētis</td>
<td>reg erēris, or-re</td>
<td>reg erēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg erēt</td>
<td>reg erēnt</td>
<td>reg erētur</td>
<td>reg erēntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>rēx erim</th>
<th>rēx erimus</th>
<th>rēct us sēs</th>
<th>sētis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Pluperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>rēx issem</th>
<th>rēx issēmus</th>
<th>rēct us essēs</th>
<th>essētis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēx issēs</td>
<td>rēx issētis</td>
<td>rēctē essēt</td>
<td>essent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx isset</td>
<td>rēx issent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE.

**Present.**

- *reg e, rule thou.*
- *reg e, rule thou.*
- *reg e, rule ye.*
- *reg e, rule ye.*

**Future.**

- *regitō, thou shall rule.*
- *regitō, he shall rule.*
- *regitō, he shall rule.*
- *reguntō, they shall rule.*
- *reguntō, they shall be ruled.*

---

¹ See p. 26, note.
THIRD CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE.

ACTIVE.
Pres. regere, to rule.
Perf. rexisse, to have ruled.
Fut. recturus esse, to be about to rule.

PASSIVE.

regi, to be ruled.
rectus esse, to have been ruled.
rectum iri, to be about to be ruled.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. regens, -entis, ruling.
Fut. recturus, -a, -um, about to rule.

GERUND.

G. regendī, of ruling.
D. regendō, for ruling.
Ac. regendum, ruling.
Ab. regendō, by ruling.

SUPINE.

Ac. rectum, to rule.
Ab. rectū, to rule, to be ruled.

CHAPTER XXIV. 1.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

181. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of regō.

182. EXERCISES.


II. 1. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 2. To be ruled, to rule. 3. They rule, they were ruling, they will
rule.  4. We rule, we are ruled.  5. We shall rule, we shall be ruled.  6. You are ruling, you were ruling, you will rule.  7. Rule (thou), be (thou) ruled.  8. He is ruling, he is ruled.  9. They ruled, they were ruled.  10. I rule, I ruled, I shall rule.

2.

183. EXERCISES.

scribō,¹ write; mittō,¹ send; emō,¹ buy.


II. 1. He writes, he is sent, they buy.  2. Is it written? does he send? are they bought?  3. I shall buy, thou wilt send, he will write.  4. It will not be written, we shall not be sent, thou wilt not be bought.  5. To write, to send, to buy.  6. Write, send, buy.  7. We are sent, they were bought, it is (being) written.  8. They write, they will buy, they were sending.  9. I was writing, we were sending, I shall buy.  10. You are sent, it was (being) written, they are bought.

184. EXERCISES.


¹ For principal parts, see 186.
² What would be the meaning of a militibus?

II. 1. The commander writes a letter. 2. Letters are written by the commander. 3. Hannibal was leading his soldiers into Italy. 4. The citizens are defended by their leaders. 5. Cæsar conquered all his enemies. 6. Rome will be defended by the citizens. 7. Drive the sheep into the fields. 8. There are many robbers in the city. 9. Near the town is a broad valley. 10. Come down out of the tower.

3.

185.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. The king's brothers send soldiers into Greece. 2. I will send my brother's son into Africa. 3. You will be sent into Sicily. 4. Send men across the river. 5. The city was defended with great bravery by all the citizens. 6. Pyrrhus led many men across the sea into Italy. 7. In winter many animals are overcome by hunger. 8. The farmers are buying food for their sheep. 9. Strong men were driving the white horses into the river. 10. The good shepherd leads his sheep.

1 See 100.
2 Is it necessary to translate with by cum? See examples and rule, 144, 145.
3 Is in to be separately expressed in Latin? See fifth sentence above, and examples and rule, 135, 136.
186.

**VOCABULARY.**

agog, 3, egi, actum, drive, lead.  Caesar, -aris, m., Caesar.
dé-fendó, 3, -dī, -sum, defend.  canis, -is, m. & f., dog. (153.)
dé-scendó, 3, -dī, -sum, descend,  civis, -is, m. & f., citizen.
go down, come down.  dé, prep. w. abl., concerning, about.
dūcō, 3, dūxī, ductum, lead.  epistula, -ae, f., letter.
emō, 3, ēmi, ēumptum, buy.  famēs, -is, f., hunger, famine.
mittō, 3, misi, missum, send.  hiemis, hiemis, f., winter.
scribō, 3, scriptis, scriptum, write.  latrō, -onis, m., robber.
sūmō, sūmpiō, sūumptum, take.  mundus, -i, m., world, universe.
vincō, 3, vici, victum, conquer.  prope, prep. w. acc., near.

superō (102), to have the upper hand, surpass, conquer.
vincō, to get the mastery, vanquish, conquer.

What difference do ye make out from a comparison of the meanings?

4.

187.

**COLLOQUIUM.**

**Charōn et Mercurius.**

Ch. Salvē, Ō Mercuri!  had
M. Et tū, salvē, portitor.

Ch. Mercuri, dūcēsne homō multōs mānēs?

M. Hodiē māniōm dūcō numerum māgniōm. Trāste e officium meum. Ithaca tibi procul dubiō nōta est atque Uliōnēs.

Ch. Rēctē dixisti. Ithaca est insula inter Graeciam et soul

Ītaliam sita; et mihi nōtus est Uliōnēs, nam ipse ólīm huc

vēnit.

M. Jam aspice mānēs procerum et servōrum in fidōrum.

Hī ommēs ab Uliōce necātī sunt.

Ch. Istud mihi placet. Mānēs in cymbā trānsveham.

Valē, Mercuri.

M. Et tū valē, Charōn.
5.

188. FOR TRANSLATION.¹

Püblius Cornëlius Scëpiò.


---

CHAPTER XXV. 1.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

189. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of regö.

190. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Rëxit, rëxerat, rëxerit. 2. Rëxërunç, rëxcrant, rëxerint. 3. Rëxisse, rëctus esse. 4. Rëctum est, rëctum erat, rëctum erit. 5. Rëxistë, rëxeräs, rëxeris. 6. Rëximus,

¹ For meanings of words, see general vocabulary.
² The elder.
³ When a youth.
⁴ Presented them with their liberty = set them free.
⁵ From urgeö; ita ursit, pressed them so hard.
⁶ Ut... revocärent, that they recalled.
⁷ Nom. plur., subject of habüërunç.
THIRD CONJUGATION. 81


II. 1. I have ruled, I had ruled, I shall have ruled. 2. I have ruled, I have been ruled. 3. They have ruled, they have been ruled. 4. You ruled, you had ruled, you will have ruled. 5. He will have ruled, he will have been ruled. 6. To have been ruled, to have ruled. 7. They had ruled, they had been ruled. 8. She has ruled, she has been ruled. 9. It was ruled, it had been ruled, it will have been ruled. 10. They (neut.) were ruled, they had been ruled, they will have been ruled.

2.

191. EXERCISES.


II. 1. She had been led, it has been bought, they (neut.) will have been taken. 2. I have taken, you have bought, he has led. 3. Has it not been taken? had he not been led? have they (neut.) not been bought? 4. I had led, you had bought, he had taken. 5. They will have taken, I shall have led, thou wilt have bought. 6. I was led, it was bought, it had been taken. 7. To have been led, to have been bought, to have been taken. 8. We shall have taken, I shall have bought, he will have led. 9. Did he take? didst thou buy? did you lead? 10. They did not lead, you had not bought, she will not have taken.

1 How do you know whether this form is present or perfect?
192.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. Have you lost your books? 2. My brother will sail in a small ship. 3. Do men live in trees? 4. Neptune ruled (over) the deep sea. 5. A river flows out of the mountain. 6. The girl’s head was encircled with flowers. 7. War has been waged in Italy. 8. A lazy boy is often despised. 9. The ancient Romans did not despise war. 10. The king had surrounded the city with walls. 11. Did not Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, wage war in Italy?

193.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. A large fleet was bought with gold by Cāesar. 2. The general’s daughter had been carried in a wagon.

1 Posita est, is situated. 2 Future passive of vehō.
4.

195. COLLOQUIUM.

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

P. Quis fuit Hannibal? Fuit Rōmānus an Carthāginiēnsis?

D. Fuit Carthāginiēnsis et a Scipīōne victus est.

P. Ubi fuit Hannibalī patria?

D. Carthāgō, Hannibalīs patria, fuit in Āfricā.

P. Cūr fuit? cūr nōn est in Āfricā?

D. Quia Carthāgō a Scipīōne dēlēta est.

P. Quot nōmina erant Scipīōnī?

D. Tria Scipīōnī erant nōmina. Pūblius Cornēlius Scipīō.

P. Rēctē, mī puer, praenōmen Pūblius; Cornēlius nōmen

gentīle; Scipīō cognōmen.

D. Nōnne interdum appellātus est Scipīō Āfricānus?

P. Certissimē. Hōc autem nōmen dīcēbant Rōmānī.

Cognōmen secundum.

CHAPTER XXVI. 1.

REVIEW.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dēfendite, cīvēs, cīvitātem. 2. Cīvitās est māter

nōstra. 3. Cīvēs sunt frātrēs nostri. 4. Pueri, frātrēs

amāte. 5. Ērnāte, cīvēs, urbem monumentis statuīisque.

6. Urbēs pulchrae in Ītāliē videntur. 7. Habitāsne in urbe

pulchrā? 8. Urbēs Rōmā1 mūro cincta est. 9. Rōmā a cīvibus

cum fortitūdine dēfēnsa est. 10. Militēs Rōmānī erant fortēs.

1 See 157, 158.
II. 1. The citizens are defenders of the state. 2. Roman mothers furnished brave heroes for the state. 3. Do you write letters to your brothers? 4. From springs in the mountains the rivers flow. 5. The city will be adorned with golden statues. 6. In Greece we do not see many beautiful cities. 7. The city is defended by watchful guards. 8. A high wall encircles the farmer’s field. 9. We shall remain near Caesar’s camp. 10. We teach our children by means of stories. 4

2.

197.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. Who defeated the Roman consuls? 2. The consul was besieging a city of Spain. 3. We all have seen the pleasant light of the moon. 4. The sad maidens were sitting near a deep river. 5. The maidens were weeping because they had lost their flowers. 6. The bears are descending headlong into the sea. 7. Soldiers are not often seen in our streets. 8. The ancient city of Rome was ruled by kings. 9. The shepherd’s son will weep if he loses (shall have lost) a sheep. 10. The teacher was teaching his pupils the poems of Homer.

1 ē rather than ā.
2 See p. 37, note 1.
3 See p. 14, note 1.
4 See 90 and 91.
5 See 117.

6 Omnēs agrees with the understood subject of coercēmur.
7 The city of Rome = the city Rome. See 157, 158.
8 Accusative. See p. 54, note 2.
198. VOCABULARY.

fābula, -ae, r., story, tale, fable.
frāter, -tris, m., brother.
māter, -tris, r., mother.
onnis, -e, adj., all, every, whole.
praeceps, -cēptis, adj., headlong.
tristis, -e, adj., sad, gloomy.

3.

199. FOR TRANSLATION.¹

Prōserpīna.

Prōserpīna, Cerēris filiā, aliquando in Siciliā ad urbem
Hennam in campīs flōrēs carpēbat, sertā nectēbat lūdēbatque
cum comitibus. Nam campī ibi flōribus pulchris sparsi²
sunt. Subitō terra concussa³ est atque Plūtō, īnferōrum
deus, ē terrā ēmersit;⁴ ējus currum eō ātrī vehēbant. Deus
Prōserpīnam abdūxīt, ut uxor sua et īnferōrum rēgīna esset;⁵
clāmōrem puellae compressit.⁶ Jūppiter autem frātrī permiiserat ut Prōserpīnam abdūceret.⁷ Māter eum⁸ ignōrāret,
ubi filiā esset,⁹ tōtum orbem terrārum frūstrā peragrāvit.

[Continued on p. 92.]

---

CHAPTER XXVII. 1.

IRREGULAR. ADJECTIVES.

200. The following adjectives have īus (rarely īus) in the genitive singular of all genders, and ī in the
dative:

alīus, alīa, alīud, another.
mūlus, -a, -um, no one, none, no.
scūlus, -a, -um, alone, sole.
tōtus, -a, -um, whole.
ūllus, -a, -um, any.
ūnus, -a, -um, one, alone.

¹ For meanings of words, see
général vocabulary.
² From spargō.
³ From concutiō.
⁴ From ēmergō.
⁵ Ut . . . esset, that she might be.
⁶ From comprimō.
⁷ Ut . . . abdūceret, that he
might lead away = to lead away.
⁸ Cum ignōrāret, since she did
not know.
⁹ Was.
alter, altera, alterum, the other of two.
neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither of two.
uter, utra, utrum, which of two?
uterque, utrāque, utrumque, each of two, both.

201. SINGULAR.  PARADIGM.  PLURAL.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{masc.} & \text{fem.} & \text{neut.} & \text{masc.} & \text{fem.} & \text{neut.} \\
N. & \text{al} \text{ius} & \text{al} \text{i}a & \text{ali} \text{ud} & \text{ali} \text{i} & \text{ali} \text{ae} & \text{alia} \\
G. & \text{al} \text{i} \text{us} & \text{al} \text{i} \text{us} & \text{ali} \text{us} & \text{ali} \text{orum} & \text{ali} \text{arum} & \text{alia} \text{orum} \\
D. & \text{al} \text{i} & \text{al} \text{i} & \text{al} \text{i} & \text{al} \text{i} \text{is} & \text{al} \text{i} \text{is} & \text{alia} \\
A. & \text{al} \text{i} \text{um} & \text{al} \text{i} \text{am} & \text{al} \text{i} \text{ud} & \text{al} \text{i} \text{os} & \text{al} \text{i} \text{as} & \text{alia} \\
A. & \text{al} \text{i} \text{sa} & \text{al} \text{i} & \text{al} \text{i} & \text{al} \text{i} \text{is} & \text{al} \text{i} \text{is} & \text{alia} \\
\end{array}
\]

202. EXERCISES.


II. 1. The farmer was ploughing his field alone.  2. He is praised by one, blamed by another.  3. To which of the two does the teacher give the praise?  4. Some like\(^6\) boys, others like girls.  5. Death is feared by no good man.  6. The consul conquered some of his enemies, by others he

---

1 Literally, another said another thing. The English of it is, one said one thing, another another.
2 Into which part? i.e., in which direction?
3 Alter...alter, the one...the other.
4 Aliī...aliī, some...others; aliud...aliud, one thing...another thing.
5 This sentence illustrates a common usage of the Latin. A verb belonging to two groups of words is often placed only with the last, and must be mentally supplied with the first. With the English it is the reverse. Show the application of the remark.
6 See note 6.
was conquered. 7. One leg is long, the other short. 8. Some praise one thing, others another. 9. The plan of the whole war was disclosed to the enemy. 10. The citizens praised Cicero alone.

203. VOCABULARY.

brevis, -e, adj., short.
cēdō, 3, cēssi, cēssum, yield.
Cicerō, -ōnis, m., Cicero, a Roman orator.
crūs, crūris, n., leg.
culpa, -ae, f., blame, fault.
dolus, -i, m., trick, deceit.
e-nūntiō, 1, disclose, announce.
flūmen, -inis, n., river. (172.)
laus, laudis, f., praise.
mors, mortis, f., death.
praeeceptor, -ōris, m., teacher.
precēs, -um, f. (plur.), prayers, entreaty.
ratio, -ōnis, f., plan, method, reason.
servō, 1, save, preserve.
vērus, -a, -um, adj., true.
virtūs, -ūtis, f., virtue, courage.

204. COLLOQUIUM.

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

D. Quis fuit Cicerō?
P. Clārus cōnsul Rōmānus fuit.
D. Multane bella gessit?
P. Minimē. Orātor fuit; dux mīlitum semel. once only

D. Nōnne ējus orātiōnēs in scholā legēmus?
P. Complūrēs. Multās epistulās quoque scripsit Cicerō. several

D. Ad quōs epistulās scripsit?
P. Ad frātrem et amīcōs.
D. Fuitne Cicerō ējus "nōmen"? 1
P. Nōn fuit "nōmen," sed "cōgnōmen."
D. Quid fuit ējus "nōmen"?
P. Tullius.

1 See 195.
D. Et praenomen?
P. Marcus.

D. Hoc dicas mihi, praeeceptor erudissime, si placet; tell
difficilesne sunt Ciceronis orationes?

P. Sine dubio difficiles sunt, puer autem acer eas intelligere potest.

CHAPTER XXVIII. 1.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

205. Adjectives in Latin, as in English, change their terminations to express different degrees of quality: altus, altior, altissimus, high, higher, highest.

Adjectives may also be compared in Latin, as in English, by means of adverbs.

206. Examine the following: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>altus (alto)</td>
<td>altior, altius</td>
<td>altissimus, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>levus (levi)</td>
<td>levior, levius</td>
<td>levissimus, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prudens (prudent)</td>
<td>prudentior, prudentius</td>
<td>prudentissimus, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher (pulchro)</td>
<td>pulchrior, pulchrius</td>
<td>pulcherimus, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miser (misero)</td>
<td>miserior, miserius</td>
<td>miserimus, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acer (acri)</td>
<td>acrior, acrius</td>
<td>acerimus, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe (1) that the comparative is formed in both the above groups by dropping the final vowel of the stem, if the stem ends in a vowel, and adding ior, ius.

(2) That the superlative is formed in the first group from the shortened stem by adding issimus, issima, issimum.
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

(3) But if the adjective ends in er, the superlative is formed by adding rimus, rina, rimum, to the positive.

207. Six adjectives in lis drop the final vowel of the stem and add limus to form the superlative:

facilis, -e, easy. facilior, facilius facillimus, -a, -um
dificilis, -e, hard. difficilior, difficilius difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, like. similior; similius similimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, unlike. dissimilior, dissimilius dissimilimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, low. humilior, humilius humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, slender. gracilior, gracilius gracillimus, -a, -um

208. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

bonus, -a, -um melior, -iūs optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um pēior, -us pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um māior, -us maximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um ——, plus¹ plurimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um minor, -us minimus, -a, -um
vetus vetustior, -iūs veterrimus, -a, -um

DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE.

209. SINGULAR. PARADIGM. PLURAL.

M. & F. NEUT. M. & F. NEUT.
N.V. altior altius altiorēs altiora
G. altioris altioris altiorum altiorum
D. altiorī altiorī altioribus altioribus
Ac. altiorēm altius altiorēs, īs altiora
Ab. altiorē, ī altiorē, ī altioribus altioribus

Compare, and decline in the comparative:

atrōx, -ōcis, fierce. liber, -era, -erum, free.
audāx, -ācis, bold. piger, pigra, pigrum, lazy.
celer, -eris, swift. placidus, -a, -um, calm.
fēlix, -ēcis, lucky. sapiēns, -entis, wise.

¹ Plus has in singular only plural, nom. plūrēs, plūra, gen.
nom., gen. (plūris), and acc.; in plūrium, etc.
EXERCISES.


2.

211. We can say in Latin without difference in meaning:

1. Quis est eloquentior quam Cicerō?  
2. Quis est eloquentior Cicerōne?

Who is more eloquent than Cicero?

212. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The comparative degree is followed by the ablative when quam (than) is omitted.

But the ablative can take the place only of quam and the nominative, or quam and the accusative.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. A river is longer than a brook. 2. Seas are deeper than rivers. 3. The sources of great rivers are not always in high mountains. 4. Elephants bear heavier burdens than

1 The superlative must often be translated by very with the positive.
horses. 5. The horse and the dog are very faithful. 6. Your dog is better than mine. 7. Not many cities are more beautiful than Rome. 8. The elephant is bolder than the horse. 9. Your task is easier than mine; but mine is not very hard. 10. The bravest men are not always the wisest.

214. VOCABULARY.

America, -ae, f., America.
antem, 1 conj., but, moreover.
bōstia, -ae, f., beast.
colōnia, -ae, f., colony.
gēns, gentis, f., nation, people.
ignāvia, -ae, f., cowardice.

litus, -oris, n., shore.
mendācium, -ī, n., lying.
nihil, n. (indecl.), nothing.
pigritia, -ae, f., laziness.
quam, conj., than.

rivus, ī, m., brook.

3.

"Proserpin gathering flowers,
Herself a fairer flower, by gloomy Dis
Was gather’d, which cost Ceres all that pain
To seek her through the world."

215. FOR TRANSLATION. 2

Tandem Cerēs ā Sōle, qui omnia cōnspicit, audīvit quis filiam abduxisset. 3 Itaque statim iter ad Jovem 4 flexit 5 et precibus animum ejus inflexit, ut filia ā Plūtōne remitterētur. 6 Jūppiter id permīsit, sī jējūna mānsisset. 7 Sed cum Prōserpinā māli Pūnicī septem grāna gustāvisset, 9 nōn licuit. Tandem Prōserpine persussum est, 10 ut per partem annī dūmidiam apud mātrem, per partem alteram apud ūferōs esset. 11

1 Always placed after the first or second word in the sentence.
2 Continued from p. 86.
3 Had led away.
4 Nom. Jūppiter.
5 From flectō.
6 Ut ... remitterētur, that her daughter might be sent back.
7 Had remained.
8 Since.
9 Had tasted.
10 It was permitted = permission was given.
11 Ut ... esset, that she should be = to be. For the order, see p. 87, note 5.
CHAPTER XXIX. 1.

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

216. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives, and follow them in comparison.

217. Examine the following: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>STEM</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gratus, thankful</td>
<td>grato-</td>
<td>gratē, thankfully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benignus, kind.</td>
<td>benigno-</td>
<td>benignē, kindly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miser, wretched.</td>
<td>miser-</td>
<td>miserē, wretchedly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher, beautiful</td>
<td>pulchro-</td>
<td>pulchrē, beautifully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis, brave.</td>
<td>fortī-</td>
<td>fortiter, bravely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācer, eager.</td>
<td>ācri-</td>
<td>ācriter, eagerly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prūdens, wise.</td>
<td>prudent-</td>
<td>prūdentēr, wisely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>felix, lucky.</td>
<td>felici-</td>
<td>feliciter, luckily.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe (1) that the adjectives of the first group are of the o (or second) declension, and that the adverbs are formed from the stem of the adjectives by changing the final o of the stem to ē.

(2) That the adjectives of the second group are of the third declension, and that the adverbs are formed from the stem of the adjectives by adding ter.

(3) But stems in nt drop t before adding the suffix ter.

218. Examine the following: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>multus, much.</td>
<td>multum, much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilis, easy.</td>
<td>facile, easily.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impānis, unpunished.</td>
<td>impūne, with safety.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>citus, quick.</td>
<td>citō, quickly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subitus, sudden.</td>
<td>subitō, suddenly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prīmus, first.</td>
<td>prīmō, at first.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe that in the first group the accusative singular neuter of the adjective is used as an adverb; in the second, the ablative.
219. Examine the following:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grátē</td>
<td>grátius</td>
<td>grátissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserē</td>
<td>miserius</td>
<td>miserrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācriter</td>
<td>ācrius</td>
<td>ācerrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēliciter</td>
<td>fēlicius</td>
<td>fēlicissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benē¹</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>optimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malē</td>
<td>pējus</td>
<td>pessimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum</td>
<td>plūs</td>
<td>plūrimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>——</td>
<td>magis</td>
<td>maximē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter accusative singular of the adjective; and that the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing, as in the positive, the final o of the stem to e.

If the adjective is irregular in comparison, the adverb is likewise.

Compare:—

placidē, calmly.  libērē, freely.  pulchrē, beautifully.
audāctē, boldly.  celerītē, quickly.  prudēntē, wisely.

2.

220. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ēōlin fuit² Athēniēnsis clārissimus.  2. Fidēliter légibus³ civitātīs pārēbat.  3. Jūstē omnibus rēbus⁴ agēbat.  4. Audāctē pūgnāvit atque amīcum fortītē défendit.  5. Sapientēr juvenēs aliōsque docēbat.  6. Falsō et tūrpītē accūsātus est; libērē sē⁵ défendit nēque tīmēbat.  7. Injūstissimē ad mortem damnātus est a cīvibus.  8. Venēnum in carcere bibit placidē.  9. Ējus⁶ memoria délēbitur nunquam.  10. Quis fuit Athēniēnsis?

II. 1. Was Socrates an illustrious Athenian?  2. Was he more illustrious than other citizens?  3. Did he not act most

¹ Formed irregularly from dōnus.  ² There was.  ³ Observe the dative with pāreō.  ⁴ Things. See 260.  ⁵ Himself.  ⁶ Of him.
justly in all respects?  4. Did he very faithfully obey the laws of the Athenians?  5. Did he not teach the Athenians very wisely?  6. Did he not defend a young man in battle very bravely?  7. Why was he most basely accused and condemned to death?  8. We shall cherish his memory more diligently.  9. His memory will be cherished faithfully by the best men.  10. In vain shall we seek for a better man than Socrates.

III.  1. Julius Cæsar was a very famous man.  2. He was excellently brought up by his mother.  3. He learned the Greek language very well.  4. He was an illustrious general and fought many battles most successfully.  5. In Gaul he took towns, and cruelly slew many men.  6. He boldly sailed to Britain with many ships.  7. But the inhabitants did not basely beg for peace.  8. He quickly overcame all his enemies.  9. (As) consul he ruled the Roman state wisely and well.  10. He was foully slain by Brutus and other Romans.

221. VOCABULARY.

crūdēlītēr [crūdēlis], cruelly.
diligenter [diligēns], diligently.
falsō [falsus], falsely.
fidēlītēr [fidēlis], faithfully.
frūstrā, in vain.
inqūstē [inqūstus], unjustly.
jūstē [jūstus], justly.
līberē [līber], freely, fearlessly.
ōlim, formerly.
optimē, very well, excellently.
sapienter [sapiēns], wisely.
turpītēr [turpis], basely, foully.

accūsō, 1 [ad, causa], accuse.
Athēnēnēs, -ē, adj., Athenian.
bībō, 3, bibi, pōtum, drink.
carcer, -eris, n., prison.

colō, 3, colui, cultum, cultivate,
cherish, care for.
dannō, 1, condemn.
discō, 3, dixi, —, learn.
juvenis, -is, m. & f., youth.
lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language.
nāvigō, 1 [nāvis, ago], sail.
necō, 1, kill. Cf. interficiō.
pārcō, 2, -ui, —, obey (w. dat.).
pāx, pācis, f., peace.
petō, 3, -ivi, -ī, -ītum, beg for, ask.
quaeō, 3, quaesivi, -ii, quaesitum, seek for, ask, inquire.
sed, conj., but. Cf. autem (214).
Sōcratēs, -is, m., Socrates, an Athenian philosopher.
venēnum, -i, n., poison.

1 Compare I. 3.  2 See p. 91, note.
3.

222. COLLOQUIUM.

PATER ET FILIOLUS.

P. Quid, mī filiole, in scholā hodiē discēbās?
 little son

F. Discēbam, mī pater, pēnsum de adverbīs longissimum.

to what

P. Cuī partī orātiōnis est adverbium simillimum?

F. Simillimum, ut opinor, est adverbium adjectivō.

as I think

P. Rēctē, puer; sed illud mihi explicā, si poteris: Sī, this explain if you can

ut dīcis, adverbium adjectivō est simile, unde nōmen traxit?

whence has derived

F. Fortasse propter hoc, quod saepissimē verbīs ad-

perhaps on account of this because very often verbs

jungitur.

P. Optimē, filiole; ēn tībi āsem!

here is for you penny

---

CHAPTER XXX.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

223. I-VERBS.

Audīō (stem audī), hear.

Principal Parts: audīō, audīre, audīví, audītum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INDICATIVE</td>
<td>INDICATIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I am heard, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I hear, etc.</td>
<td>I am heard, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīō</td>
<td>audīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīs</td>
<td>audītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audiunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Improperf.

I was hearing, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was heard, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FOURTH CONJUGATION.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>FUTURE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I shall hear, etc.</td>
<td>I shall be heard, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiam</td>
<td>audiēmus</td>
<td>audiār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēs</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
<td>audiēris, or-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēt</td>
<td>audiēunt</td>
<td>audiētur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have heard, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivistī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUPERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I had heard, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiveram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiverās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiverat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE PERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I shall have heard, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiverō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiverēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiverēt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīrēt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiverim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiverēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiverēt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 See p. 26, note.
### FOURTH CONJUGATION.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PLUPERFECT</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audivissem</td>
<td>audivissēmus</td>
<td>essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivissēs</td>
<td>audivissētis</td>
<td>essēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivisset</td>
<td>audivissent</td>
<td>esset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>FUTURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audī, hear thou.</td>
<td>audītō, thou shalt hear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīte, hear ye.</td>
<td>audītō, he shall hear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditor, thou shalt be heard.</td>
<td>audītō, he shall be heard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditor, ye shall hear.</td>
<td>audiantor, they shall be heard.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRES.</th>
<th>PERF.</th>
<th>FUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīre, to hear.</td>
<td>audīisse, to have heard.</td>
<td>auditūrus esse, to be about to hear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīri, to be heard.</td>
<td>auditūus esse, to have been heard.</td>
<td>auditūm ēri, to be about to be heard.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PARTICIPLE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRES.</th>
<th>GER.</th>
<th>PERF.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēns, -entis, hearing.</td>
<td>audiēndus, -a, -um, to be heard.</td>
<td>auditūs, -a, -um, heard, having been heard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditūrus, -a, -um, about to hear.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### GERUND.

- G. audiēndī, of hearing.
- D. audiēndō, for hearing.
- Ac. audiēndum, hearing.
- Ab. audiēndō, by hearing.

### SUPINE.

- Ac. auditūm, to hear.
- Ab. auditā, to hear, to be heard.
CHAPTER XXXI. 1.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

224. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of audiō.

225. EXERCISES.


II. 1. Thou hearest, thou wast hearing, thou wilt hear. 2. I hear, I am heard. 3. He is hearing, he was hearing, he will hear. 4. To be heard, to hear. 5. We were hearing, we were (being) heard. 6. We hear, we heard, we shall hear. 7. They will hear, they will be heard. 8. You heard, you were heard. 9. Hear (ye), be ye heard. 10. I hear, I heard, I shall be heard.

226. EXERCISES.

Pūniō, punish; mūniō, fortify; vestiō, clothe.


II. 1. He was clothing, he was punishing, he was fortifying. 2. They will be clothed, they will be fortified, they will be punished. 3. Be thou clothed, punish (thou), fortify. 4. I fortify, he punishes, we are clothing. 5. Are you not being clothed? was it not fortified? will he not be pun-
ished? 6. They are being punished, it is being fortified, thou wilt be clothed. 7. We punish, we were fortifying, they will clothe. 8. Were you being clothed? will it be fortified? shall I be punished? 9. I shall not fortify, you are not being clothed, they will not be punished. 10. I punished, you will fortify, they clothe.

3.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. A good father will nurture, clothe, and instruct his children. 2. It is very pleasant to hear the sweet voice of the nightingale. 3. All our pains are ended by death. 4. The general justly punishes a cowardly soldier. 5. The sheep are carefully guarded by the dog. 6. Scipio finished the war in Africa. 7. The pupils are very faithfully instructed by their teachers. 8. My son, soothe your mother’s cares. 9. The city is fortified by strong walls. 10. In summer the trees are clothed with leaves.

228.

VOCABULARY.

custōdiō, 4 [custin], guard.
dormiō, 4, sleep.
ē-rudiō, 4 [redis], teach, instruct.
finiō, 4 [finis], end, finish.
mollīō, 4 [mollis], soften, soothe.
mūniō, 4, fortify, defend.
nūtriō, 4, nurture, nourish.
pūniō, 4, punish.
vestiō, 4, clothe.
carmen, -inis, n., song.
dolor, -ōris, m., pain.
folium, -i, n., leaf.
grāmen, -inis, n., grass.
ignāvus, -a, -um, adj., cowardly.
jūcundus, -a, -um, adj., pleasant.
luscinia, -ae, f., nightingale.
vēr, vēris, n., spring.
vōx, vōcis, f., voice.

1 Songs. 2 See p. 91, note. 3 Neuter gender. 4 See 144, 145.
CHAPTER XXXII. 1.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

229. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of audiō.

230.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. Thou hast heard, thou hadst heard, thou wilt have heard. 2. They have been heard, they had been heard, they will have been heard. 3. I have heard, I have been heard. 4. To have been heard, to have heard. 5. We have heard, we had heard, we shall have heard. 6. We have been heard, we had been heard, we shall have been heard. 7. You have heard, you have been heard. 8. He had heard, he had been heard.

231.

EXERCISES.


1 For finīvīstī. Perfects in ēī often drop ē and contract ē to ē.
2 For vestīverās.
II. 1. Have they not been clothed? have they (neut.) not been finished? were they not taught? 2. We have finished, we have clothed, we have taught. 3. She had been taught, they (neut.) had been finished, we (fem.) had been clothed. 4. Didst thou teach? have you finished? has she clothed? 5. They had clothed, they will have taught, I have finished. 6. I had clothed, thou hadst taught, he had finished. 7. We shall not have finished, they will not have clothed, you will not have taught. 8. It was not finished, we had not been taught, you will not have been clothed. 9. You have taught, you had finished, you will have clothed. 10. I shall have clothed, I had taught, I finished.

3.

232. EXERCISES.


II. 1. The king’s physician was bound by Fabricius’ slave. 2. The valor and endurance (fortitūdō) of the soldiers fortified the city. 3. The Greeks instructed the Romans in the arts.\(^3\) 4. Is it enough for a boy to sleep two hours?\(^4\) 5. The light and heat of the sun had opened the flowers. 6. The citadel was very\(^5\) carefully guarded by

---

\(^1\) How do you know whether this form is present or perfect?
\(^2\) In the arts and literature.
\(^3\) Compare I. i.
\(^4\) Duās hōrās.
\(^5\) See p. 61, note.
the soldiers. 7. To know many things is very useful. 8. To be ignorant of many things is not disgraceful. 9. The general’s camp had not been fortified. 10. Did you not hear the voice of your father?

233.

VOCABULARY.

aperió, 4, -ui, -utum, open, disclose. Fabricius, -i, m., Fabricius, a Roman general.
ne-scio, 4, know not, be ignorant of.
litterae, -ārum, f., letters, literature; often = epistula.
scio, 4, know, knew.
lūx, lūcis, f., light, daylight.
veniō, 4, vēni, ventum, come.
medicus, -i, m., physician.
vinciō, 4, vinxi, victum, bind.
nocītis, f., night. (167. 2.)
ad, prep. w. acc., to, towards.
octō, num. adj., indecl., eight.
ars, artis, f., art. (167. 2.)
turpis, -e, adj., base, disgraceful.
calor, -ōris, m., heat.

. 4.

234.

COLLOQUIUM.

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

P. Ē-qua rē est pēsum hodiernum?
D. Pēsum hodiernum est iterum dē conjugātiōne quartā.
P. Herī quartam conjugātiōnem nesciēbas; scisue hodiē?
D. Partim scio, modum autem subjunctīvum nesciō.
P. Mox subjunctīvum quoque discēs.
D. Estne utilis indicātīvum scīre quam subjunctīvum?
P. Utrumque debēmus scīre; indicātīvus autem saepe invenitur.
D. Adhuc conjugātiōnes didici quattuor. Suntne plūrēs?
P. Nōn plūrès; sed multa verba sunt anōmala.

1 See 117.
2 Remember that the Latin word for camp is plural, castra, castrōrum. What must be the number of the verb of which castra is the subject?
CHAPTER XXXIII.
THIRD CONJUGATION.

235.

Verbs in īō. ¹

Capiō (stem capē), take.

Principal Parts: capiō, capēre, cēpī, captum.

Indicative Mood.

Active.

I take, etc.
capiō  capimus

capis  capitis

capit   capiunt

Present.

I am taken, etc.
capiōr   capimur

caperis, or-re  capimini

capitur  capiuntur

Imperfect.

I was taking, etc.
capiēbam  capiēbāmus

capiēbās  capiēbātis

capiēbat  capiēbant

Future.

capiam  capiēmus

capiēs  capiētis

capiet   capiētunt

Perfect.

cēpī, cēpīstī, cēpit, etc.
captus sum, es, est, etc.

Pluperfect.

cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.
captus eram, erās, erat, etc.

Future Perfect.

cēperō, cēperīs, cēperit, etc.
captus erō, eris, erit, etc.

¹ Verbs in īō of the third conjugation are distinguished from those of the fourth by the active infinitive present. What forms of capiō are like those of audiō? Make a general statement.
THIRD CONJUGATION.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ACTIVE.                     PASSIVE.

PRESENT.
capiam, capiäs, capiat, etc. capiar, -iāris or -re, -iātur, etc.

IMPERFECT.
caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc. caperer, -erēris or -re, -erētur.

PERFECT.
cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus sim, sīs, sit, etc.

PLUPERFECT.
cēpissem, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc. captus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. capē, take thou. 
     capite, take ye.
Fut. capito, thou shalt take, etc.

capere, be thou taken.
     capimini, be ye taken.
     capitor, thou shalt be taken, etc.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. capere, to take.
     captūrus esse, to be about to take.
     captūs esse, to have been taken.
Fut. captūrus esse, to be about to take.

 Participle.

Pres. capiēns, taking.
     captūrus, about to take.
     capiēndus, to be taken.
     captus, having been taken.

GERUND.
capiēndī, of taking,
     etc.

SUPINE.

Ac. captum, to take.
     Ab. captū, to take, to be taken.
CHAPTER XXXIV. 1.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

236. VERBS IN io.

Learn all the tenses of the indicative, the present imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of capiō.

237. EXERCISES.


II. 1. We are taking, we were taking, we shall be taking. 2. Take, be taken. 3. Thou art taking, thou wast taking, thou wilt take. 4. You have taken, you had taken, you will have taken. 5. It is taken, it was taken, it will be taken. 6. I was taking, I was taken. 7. To take, to have taken. 8. To be taken, to have been taken. 9. It (fem.) has been taken, it had been taken, it will have been taken. 10. We have taken, we have been taken.

238. EXERCISES.


1 Pronounced de-in'-de.  2 Sent.
honóris é a Pyrrhó exceptú sunt. 10. Páx cum Pyrrhó nón facta est.

II. 1. A wrong was done to the Romans by the Tarentines. 2. Against Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, the Romans sent the consul Lævinus. 3. The spies of Pyrrhus were taken by Lævinus and led through his camp. 4. The Romans did not make peace with King Pyrrhus. 5. Fabri-cius saw through the design of the king and was not frightened. 6. You will welcome your friend to-day. 7. I welcome my best friend with great pleasure. 8. The enemy threw their spears and fled into the woods. 9. Did not Cæsar either conquer or slay all his enemies? 10. Finally he was himself (ipse) slain by Brutus his friend, and others.

239.

VOCABULARY.

ex-cipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [capiō], catch, accept, welcome.
faciō, 3, fēci, factum, make, do.
fugiō, 3, fugi, fugitum, flee.
inter-ficiō, 3, fēci, fectum [facciō], kill, slay. Cf. necō (221).
jaciō, 3, jēci, jactum, throw.
per-spiciō, 3, spexī, spectum [spectō], see through, into.
re-cipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [capiō], take back, get again, receive.
se recipere, withdraw, retreat.

aut ... aut, conj., either ... or.
Campānīa, -ae, ō, Campania, a division of Italy.
contrā, prep. w. acc., against.
dé-inde, adv., then, next.
dénique, adv., finally.
explōrātor, -ōris, m., scout, spy.
finis, -īs, m., end.
honor, -ōris, m., honor.
honóris, adv., honorably.
injūria, -ae, f., wrong, injury.
Lævinus, -ī, m., Lævinus, a Roman.
lēgātus, -ī, m., ambassador, lieutenant.
per, prep. w. acc., through.
proelium, -ī, n., battle. Cf. pūgna (102).
summus, -a, -um (sup. of super-rus), adj., highest.
Tarentīnus, -ī, m., an inhabitant of Tarentum, a Tarentine.

1 And ... not, neque. 2 See 144, 145.
CHAPTER XXXV. 1.

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

240.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Amāmus, monēmus, regimus, audīmus. 2. Laudant, dēlent, agunt, custōdiant. 3. Omābam, dēlēbam, vincēbam, mūniēbam. 4. Cantāvistis, habuistī, posuistī, vinxistī. 5. Mūtāvērunt, tennūrunt, ēgerunt, cēperunt, mūniērunt. 6. Portāverātis, dēlēverātis, praebuerātis, dūxerātis, dormi- 

verātis.

II. 1. Fugātur, terrētur, pōnitur, vincitur. 2. Servāberis, tenēberis, mittēre, vestīre. 3. Laudātī sumus, pro-
hibitū sumus, ducū sumus, ērudītī sumus. 4. Ėrnāre, monēre, 
trahere, pūniēre. 5. Amāri, docērī, contemnī, jacī, aperīrī.
6. Amātæ sunt, monitæ sunt, exceptæ sunt, audìtæ sunt.

III. 1. Dormīte, superāte, faciēte, vincīte, vincīte, prae-
bēte. 2. Vulnērāvīssē, jēcīssē, vēnīssē, docuīssē, ñūxīssē.
3. Récipimur, spectāmur, agimur, vestimur, docēmur. 4. Do-
cēbitis, pūniētis, trahētis, fugiētis, creābitis. 5. Mīsit, habuit, 
armāvit, jēcīt, fūgit. 6. Vincimīnī, vituperānīnī, terrēminī, 
vincimīnī, capimīnī.

241.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Thou lovest, thou advisest, thou rulest, thou hear-
est. 2. I shall praise, I shall destroy, I shall drive, I shall 
guard. 3. You were adorning, you were seeing, you were 
conquering, you were fortifying. 4. We have sung, we have 
had, we have placed, we have bound. 5. You have changed, 
you have held, you have driven, you have taken, you have 
fortified. 6. I had carried, I had destroyed, I had furnished, 
I had led, I had slept.
II. 1. We are put to flight, we are frightened, we are placed, we are bound. 2. He will be saved, he will be held, he will be sent, he will be clothed. 3. They have been praised, they have been prevented, they have been led, they have been instructed. 4. They will be adorned, they will be advised, they will be drawn, they will be punished. 5. To be loved, to be taught, to be despised, to be thrown, to be opened. 6. Thou hast been loved, thou hast been advised, thou hast been welcomed, thou hast been heard.

III. 1. Sleep, surpass, do (fac), bind, conquer, furnish. 2. To wound, to throw, to come, to teach, to flow. 3. They are received, they are witnessed, they are driven, they are clothed, they are taught. 4. I shall teach, I shall punish, I shall draw, I shall flee, I shall create. 5. They have sent, they have had, they have armed, they have thrown, they have fled. 6. Thou art conquered, thou art blamed, thou art frightened, thou art bound, thou art taken.

3.

242.

COLLOQUIUM.

JACOBUS ET AUGUSTUS.

J. Dēnique ad finem pēnsi pervēnimus; quid jam ini-

cipiēmus?

A. Tū quidquid vidēbitur incipiēs: ego incipiam nihil.

J. Quārē? esne dēfessus?

A. Certē, admodum dēfessus; pēnsum recōgnōscendum

mē quidem paene finīvit.

J. Mox recreāberis, si mēcum ad natandum venīēs.

3.
A. Prefectō tēcum veniam, nam natāre mihi est jūcun-surely with you

dissimūm et semper et praeceipuē cum,
both especially when

"Sōle sub ardentē resonant arbusta ciciādis."
under glowing resound groves the cicadae

J. Quam laute poētam aliquem landās!
how elegantly some quote

A. Hune Vergilī versiculum mē docuit praeceptor.
this Vergil line

---

CHAPTER XXXVI. 1.
FOURTH DECLENSION.

243. The stem ends in ū.

244. RULE OF GENDER.—Nouns in us are masculine; those in ū are neuter.

1. The following nouns, and a few others, are feminine: acus, needle; domus, house; ādīs (plur.), Ides; manus, hand; porticus, portico; tribus, tribe.

245. PARADIGMS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING.</td>
<td>PLUR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.V. gradūs</td>
<td>gradūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. gradūs</td>
<td>graduum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. gradū (ū)</td>
<td>gradibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. gradum</td>
<td>gradūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. gradū</td>
<td>gradibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V.  us</td>
<td>ūs</td>
<td>ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ūs</td>
<td>uum</td>
<td>ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ā (ū)</td>
<td>ibus (ubus)</td>
<td>ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. um</td>
<td>ūs</td>
<td>ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ā</td>
<td>ibus (ubus)</td>
<td>ū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
246. The fourth declension is a modification of the third. Thus, *gradus* is for *graduis*, *gradum* for *graduam*, *gradu* for *gradue*, etc.

247. *Artus*, *joint*, *partus*, *birth*, *tribus*, *tribe*; sometimes *portus*, *harbor*, *vera*, *a spit*; also dissyllables in *cus*, have the termination *ubus* in the dative and ablative plural.

248. *Domus*, *house*, has also forms of the second declension. See special paradigms, 262.

249. Decline together *domus mea*, *my house*; *exercitus magnus*, *large army*; *Idas Martiae*, *Ides of March*.

250. 

**EXERCISES.**


II. 1. The enemy (*plur.*) were conquered on the arrival 2 of Caesar. 2. Many animals fight with their horns. 3. Many lakes are seen in the Alps. 4. The ancients honored the oak (as) the tree 3 of Jupiter. 5. The songs of birds are heard among the oaks. 6. In ancient times men fought with bows and arrows. 7. The consulship of Cicero was very renowned. 8. Caesar came into Italy with a large army. 9. The arrival of the army freed the citizens from fear 4. 10. Between school and home we take (make) many steps.

---

1 *Naves longae*, *ships of war*.
2 See 136.
3 Predicate accusative.
4 See 128, 129, 130.
251. VOCABULARY.

adventus, -ús, m. [adveniō], arrival, approach.
arcus, -ús, m., bow.
cantus, -ús, m., song. [sulship.
cōnsulātus, -ús, m. [cōnsul], con-
cornū, -ús, n., horn.
exercitus, -ús, m. [exerceō], army.
lacus, -ús, m., lake.
magistrātus, -ús, m. [magister], office, magistrate.
manus, -ús, f., hand.
metus, -ús, m., fear.
mōtus, -ús, m. [moveō], movement, motion.

capax, -ae, f., capacity.

capitis, -ī, m., head.

capitālis, -ātis, m., capital.
capitō, -ē, v., cap.
cāritas, -ātis, m., kindness.
cāritātis, -ātis, m. [cāritis], kindness.
cyclus, -ī, m., cycle.
domestica, -ae, f., domestica.
domesticus, -ātis, m., domestic.
edūmus, -ī, m., ederus.
edūrus, -īs, m., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
edūrum, -ūs, n., ederus.
256. Decline together res publica, state; in sing., bona fides, good faith; magna spes, great hope; dies quintus, fifth day.

257. EXERCISES.


II. 1. God is the creator of all things. 2. The commonwealth is dear to all good citizens. 3. In all human affairs there is much uncertainty. 4. The army was marshalled in a large plain. 5. The enemy advanced against the Romans' line of battle. 6. The general praised the soldiers for their fidelity. 7. In the line of battle were many foot-soldiers. 8. They had great hopes of victory. 9. In a few days the arrangement of things will be changed. 10. The consul gave a pledge to the state.

258. VOCABULARY.

acies, -ei, f., line of battle.
fidēs, -ēi, f., faith, fidelity, pledge.
plānitiēs, -ēi, f., plain.
res pūblica, f., commonwealth.
spēs, spēi, f., hope. [state.
cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, precious.
certus, -a, -um, adj., fixed, certain.
crēator, -ōris, m., creator.
domīna, -ae, f., mistress.
ex-spectō, 1, await, expect.
hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., human.
in-certus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain.
in-struō, 3, -struĭ, -structum, draw up, marshal.
ōrdō, -inis, m., order, arrangement.
paucus, -a, -um, adj., few, little.
pedes, -ītis, m. [pēs], foot-soldier.
posterus, -a, -um, adj., following, next.
prō, prep. w. abl., for, in behalf of.
prō-cēdō, 3, -cēssī, -cēssum, advance.

1 Many things are uncertain.
2 In with accusative.
3 Dé with ablative.
4 Omit.
5 See 135, 136.
6 Mostly used in the plural.
259. Examine the following:—

1. Claudus alterō pede, lame in one foot.
2. Mōribus similēs, similar in character.
3. Virtūte praecēdunt, they excel in courage.
4. Numerō aë duodecim, about twelve in number.

Observe that the ablatives pede, mōribus, virtūte, and numerō, answer the question in what respect? This ablative is called the Ablative of Specification.

260. Rule of Syntax.—The ablative is used to denote that in respect to which anything is said to be, or to be done.

261. Colloquium.

Praecētor et Discipulus.

P. Omnium dēclinātiōnum quae est difficillima? which

D. Tertia mihi vidētur difficillima.

P. Quārē ita cēnsēs? why think

D. Varietātis causā terminātiōnum in nōminātiōnō singulāri. variety on account

Genus quoque est mihi molestissimum, praesertim nōminum gender also especially nouns in ēs dēsinentium.

ending

P. Tenēsne memoriā quae nōmina plūrālem genetīvum īn iūm habeant? have

D. Prīnum nōmina īn ēs et ēs dēsinentia, sī in genetīvō first

singulāri nōn crēscunt; ut hostis et nūbēs.

Deinde monosyllaba ĵn s vel x dēsinentia, sī ante s et x stat consonān̄s; ut urbs et arx.

consonant

Tum nōmina ĵn ns et rs dēsinentia; ut cliēns et cohōrs.

Dēnique nentra ĵn e, al, ar dēsinentia; ut mārē, animal, neuter calcar.
SPECIAL PARADIGMS.

P. Optimē, mī puer; bene studuistī et bene memoriā tenēs. Jam tibi licet ire ad lūdendum.

You may play

---◊◊---

CHAPTER XXXVIII. 1.

262. SPECIAL PARADIGMS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vir, m.,</th>
<th>Vis, f.,</th>
<th>Deus, m.,</th>
<th>Senex, m.,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>man.</td>
<td>strength.</td>
<td>god.</td>
<td>old man.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SINGULAR.**

| N.V. vir | vis | deus | senex |
| G. virī | vis¹ | dei | senis |
| D. virō | vī¹ | de ēō | senī |
| Ac. virūm | vīm | de um | senem |
| Ab. virō | vī | de ēō | se ̄e |

**PLURAL.**

| N.V. virī | virēs | dei, diī, dī | senēs |
| G. virōrum | virium | de ērūm, de ēum | senum |
| D. virīs | viribus | de ērīs, diīs, dīs | senibus |
| Ac. virōs | vīrēs | de ēōs | senēs |
| Ab. virīs | viribus | de ērīs, diīs, dīs | senibus |

**Iter, n., way.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jūppiter,</th>
<th>Bōs, m. &amp; f., ox, cow.</th>
<th>Domus, f., house.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**SINGULAR.**

| N.V. iter | Jūppiter | bōs | domus |
| G. itinerēs | Jovīs | bovis | domūs |
| D. itinerī | Jovī | bovī | domūī, ō |
| Ac. iter | Jovem | bovem | domum |
| Ab. itinerē | Jove | bove | domō, ū |

**PLURAL.**

| N.V. itinerēa | bovēs | domūs |
| G. itinerērum | bovum, bo um | domu um, ōrum |
| D. itinerēribus | bōb us, būb us | domibus |
| Ac. itinerēa | bovēs | domōs, ūs |
| Ab. itinerēribus | bōb us, būb us | domibus |

¹ The genitive and dative singular are rare.
Proserpina is carried off by Pluto.

[Review 199 and 215.]

Dum Proserpina luce
Ludit, et aut violas aut candida lilia carpit,
Dumque puellari studio¹ calathosque² sinumque³
Impet, et aequales⁴ certat superare legendo⁵
Paene simul visa est dilectaque⁶ raptaque⁷ Diti.⁸

Her chance of return is lost.

Dixerat.⁹ At Cereri certum est¹⁰ educere¹¹ natam.¹²
Non ita fata siuunt, quoniam jejunia virgo
Solverat et, cultis¹³ dum simplex errat¹⁴ in hortis,
Poeniceum¹⁵ curva¹⁶ decerpserat arbore pumum,
Sumptaque callenti septem de cortice grana
Presserat¹⁷ ore suo: solusque ex omnibus illud
Ascalaphus vidit. . . .

Vidit, et indicio reditum crudelis ademit.

¹ Puellāri studiō = puellāri eum studiō. See 144 and 145.
² Que . . . que, both . . . and.
³ Aequāles = comitēs.
⁴ Legendō, in gathering (flowers).
⁵ Dilecta, from diligō.
⁶ Raptā, from rapiō. With dilecta and rapta supply est.
⁷ Diti. Translate as if, instead of the dative, it were ā Dite.
⁸ Dixerat, i.e. Jūppiter.
⁹ Cereri certum est, to Ceres it is determined = Ceres is resolved.
¹⁰ Edūcere, that is, from the lower world.
¹¹ Nātam = filiam.
¹² Cultis, with hortis.
¹³ Errat. Translate as if it were errābat. The present is very often used after dum, referring to past time. So lūdit, 1. 2.
¹⁴ Poeniceum, with pōnum.
¹⁵ Curvā, bending. The tree is loaded with fruit.
¹⁶ Presserat, from premō.
CHAPTER XXXIX. 1.

PRONOUNS.

Pronouns may be divided into eight classes, and arranged in three groups:

1. Personal.
2. Reflexive.
3. Possessive.
4. Determinative.
5. Demonstrative.
6. Relative.
7. Interrogative.
8. Indefinite.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

264. PARADIGMS.

FIRST PERSON.

Egō, I.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

N. egō, I. nōs, we.
G. meī, of me. nostrum, or nostri, of us.
D. mihi (mi), to, for me. nōbis, to, for us.
Ac. mē, me. nōs, us.
Ab. (ā) mē, by me. (ā) nōbis, by us.

SECOND PERSON.

Tu, thou.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

N. tū, thou. vōs, you, ye.
G. tuī, of thee. vestrum, or vestri, of you.
D. tibi, to, for thee. vōbis, to, for you.
Ac. tē, thee. vōs, you.
Ab. (ā) tē, by thee. (ā) vōbis, by you.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

Suī, of himself, etc.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

N. 

G. suī, of himself, herself, itself. suī, of themselves.
D. sibi, to, for himself, etc. sibi, to, for themselves.
Ac. sē (sēsē), himself, etc. sē (sēsē), themselves.
Ab. (ā) sē (sēsē), by himself, etc. (ā) sē (sēsē), by themselves.
265. 1. The personal pronoun of the third person is is, ea, id, he, she, it. But when reference is made in the oblique cases to the subject of the sentence, the reflexive suī is used: Omnēs hominēs sē (or sēsē) amant, all men love themselves.

2. The nominatives of the personal pronouns are much less frequently used in Latin than their equivalents in English. Why is this? In general, they are used only for emphasis or contrast: Ego sum aegrōtus, tū valēs, I am sick, you are well.

3. "With me, with you," etc., are not expressed, as you would expect, by cum mē, cum tē, etc., but always by mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbiscum, vōbiscum. So quibuscum (279).

4. The personal pronouns of the first and second person are often used with reflexive sense: Tū tē amās, thou lovest thyself; ego mihi noceō, I do harm to myself.

Possessive Adjective Pronouns.

266. Possessive adjective pronouns are formed from the stems of personal and reflexive pronouns:

meus, -a, -um, my, mine
(voc. sing. masc. mē).
tuus, -a, -um, thy, thine;
your, yours.

suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their (own).

noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours.

vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours.

2.

267. Exercises.


II. 1. Thy mother is dear to thee, mine to me. 2. All your plans are known to us. 3. The boy loves himself too much. 4. The burden will be carried by me, by you, by us,
by thee. 5. With you and without you we shall be equally happy. 6. Thee I love, but not thy dog. 7. O, how I shall miss you, my friend! 8. We are poor, you are rich. 9. Our life is very short. 10. The boy carried a wooden cup with him (self).

268.

VOCABULARY.

agitō, 1 [agō, put in motion], disturb, vex, chase.
beātus, -a, -um, adj., happy.
culpō, 1 [culpa], blame, censure, reproach.
dēsiderō, 1, desire, long for, miss.
ligneus, -a, -um, adj. [lignum, wood], of wood, wooden.
ninium, adv., too, too much.
nōtus, -a, -um, adj., known.
onus, -eris, n., burden
öratiō, -onis, v. [ōrō], speech, talk, address.
parīter, adv. [pār, equal], equally.
pauper, -eris, adj., poor. (167.3.)
per-fodiō, 3, -fodi, -fossum, dig through, stab, pierce.
quoque, conj., also, too.
sine, prep. w. abl., without.
ut, adv. and conj., as

3.

269.

COLLOQUIUM.

Frāter et Sorōrcula.

F. Age, sorōrcula mea, sī tibi placet, ambulābimus.
S. Quō est tibi in animō, cāre frāter, ambulāre? Nōnne

in agrōs?

F. Ita est, in agrōs et in umbrā silvārum.
S. Libenter tēcum ambulō, tamen ...

F. Quid? curruntam dubītās; sī, ut dīcis, mēcum ambulās

libenter?

S. Nōlī mē rīdere. Metuō anguēs. “Frīgidus latet
anguis in herbā,” ut cantat Vergilius.

F. Nōlī metuere. Venī; ubi frāga mātūra sunt repperī.
S. Ō quam suāve! In mē nōn jam est mora.

1 Why should the pronouns be expressed in Latin?
CHAPTER XL. 1.  
DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

270.  
PARADIGMS: Is, īdem, ipse.

Is, *that, this*; also, he, she, it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. is</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ējus</td>
<td>ējus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eī</td>
<td>eī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eum</td>
<td>eam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. eō</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

īdem, *same*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. īdem</td>
<td>eādem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ējusdem ējusdem</td>
<td>eōrunem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eīdem</td>
<td>eīdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eundem eandum īdem</td>
<td>eōsdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ēōdem eādem ēōdem</td>
<td>eēsādem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ipse, *self (himself, etc.)*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ipsīus</td>
<td>ipsīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ipsō</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Determinative pronouns, like adjectives, agree with nouns expressed or understood; īdem and ipse also with pronouns.

2. *Is* is very often used as a personal pronoun, meaning *he, she, it, they.* Also as the antecedent of qui, *who; is qui, he who.*

3. Īdem is compounded of *is* and the suffix *dem.* Īdem is for īsdem; īdem for īddem; eundem, etc., for eundem, etc.; eōrunem, etc., for eōrunem, etc.
4. **Ipse**, *self* (intensive) is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun expressed or understood, and must be distinguished from *sē, self* (reflexive):

(1) **Homo ipse veniet**, *the man himself* (and not another) *will come.*

(2) **Hominem ipsum vidi**, *I saw the man himself.*

(3) **Homo sē culpae nimium**, *the man blames himself too much.*

(4) **Miles fraterm, dein sē ipsum interfecit**, *the soldier killed his brother, then himself.*

5. How do we indicate in English in speech, and how in writing, when we use *self* (*himself, etc.*) whether we intend the intensive or the reflexive *self*?

6. **Ipse** may be variously translated: **ipse feci, I myself did it, I did it alone, I did it of my own accord.**

271. Decline together *is homo, that man; ea navis, that ship; id bellum, that war; idem dies, the same day; eadem manus, the same hand; idem onus, the same burden; vir ipse, the man himself.*

272. **EXERCISES.**


II. 1. *Sallust is an elegant author; have you read his writings?* 2. *I have not read those, but Cicero’s.* 3. *Fortune favored now you, now them.* 4. *Even (ipse) your own friend will blame you.* 5. *The minds of men are not always the same.* 6. *We were sailing with you in the same ship.* 7. *He gave me the book of his own accord.* 8. *The master*

---

1 Indirect object, though translated as a direct object. See 343.
3 Use passive of *vehō*.
4 See 270. 6.
offers the same rewards to the boys. 9. The same rewards are offered by the master himself.

273. VOCABULARY.

Androclu<s>us, -i, m., Androclus.  
Auctor, -ōris, m. [augěō, increase], maker, author.  
Elegāns, -ntis, adj., choice, elegant.  
Fāveō, 2, fāvi, fātum, be favorable to, befriend (with dat.).  
Interdum, adv., sometimes.  
Mēns, mcentis, f., mind, purpose.  
Noceō, 2, nocuí, nocitum, do harm to, hurt, injure (with dat.).  
Orbis, -is, m., circle.  
Orbis terrārum, the earth, the world.  

Animus (161), mind, soul, heart; the general word for mind.  
Mēns, mind, as that which thinks, intellect; more limited in meaning.

3. COLLOQUIUM.

274. Translate into Latin:—

Brother AND Little Sister. — Continued.

B. Let us carry¹ with us two² little-baskets.³  
S. See!⁴ I have them in my hand already.⁵  
B. The sun is hot,⁶ but there is a cool⁷ breeze.  
S. Oh, how the trees and flowers delight me!  
B. To stay in the house is downright⁸ stupid.⁹  
S. Yes, indeed,¹⁰ and I don’t mean to any more.¹¹  
B. Here are¹² the strawberries. Now we will fill our baskets. Isn’t it jolly?¹³

¹ Let us carry, portēmus.  
² Duās. See 311. 4.  
³ Corbula, -ac.  
⁴ Ecce.  
⁵ Jam.  
⁶ Ardēns.  
⁷ Frigidus.  
⁸ Admodum.  
⁹ Molestus.  
¹⁰ Yes, indeed, ista sunt, those things are (true).  
¹¹ Neither is it in mind to me more.  
¹² See 269, i. 2.  
¹³ suāvissimum.
CHAPTER XLI. 1.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

275. PARADIGMS: Hīc, iste, ille.

Hīc, this (near), this of mine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. hīc</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. hūjus</td>
<td>hūjus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. hōc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Iste, that, that of yours.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. iste</td>
<td>ista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. istīus</td>
<td>istīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. istī</td>
<td>istī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. istum</td>
<td>istum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. istō</td>
<td>istā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ille, that (yonder).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. illīus</td>
<td>illīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Hīc is used of that which is near the speaker in place, time, or thought, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the First Person: Hīc equus, this horse (near me, or belonging to me).

2. Iste is used of that which has some relation to the person addressed, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the Second Person: Iste equus, that horse (near you, or belonging to you).

3. Ille is used of that which is relatively remote from the speaker, or person addressed, in place, time, or thought, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the Third Person: Ille equus, that horse (yonder).

4. Ille often means that well-known, that famous.
5. Hic and ille are sometimes used in contrast: Hic, the latter, ille, the former.

6. Is, as a determinative pronoun, sometimes approaches hic in meaning, sometimes ille. Hence it is to be translated this or that, according to the connection.

276.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. These mountains are very high. 2. I shall always be mindful of that friend of yours. 3. This thing will be hurtful to you. 4. Demosthenes and Cicero were famous orators; the former was a Greek, the latter a Roman. 5. The citizens of yonder city are most wretched. 6. The air in these mountains is lighter than in those valleys. 7. He gave me this pretty bird. 8. That old farmer's wine is good. 9. I have read that book of yours. 10. That book of yours has been read by me, by you, by us, by us ourselves.

277.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hannibal, clārissimus ille imperātor, Alpēs montēs superāvit. 2. Militum animōs hāc orātiōne firmāvit. 3. Viādēs, militēs fortissimī, Ætalian illum. 4. Illud est domi-
ciliō hostium nostrōrum. 5. Galli, incolae hārum regiōnum, socii amicīque nostri erunt. 6. Hi nōbīs omnēs rēs necessāriās praebebunt. 7. Hi erunt hostēs illōrum Rōmānōrum

1 See p. 91, note. 2 That of yours = iste. 3 Superlative. 4 See 275. 5. 

II. 1. Hannibal increased the courage of the soldiers by these words. 2. Again, soldiers, have you defeated those famous Romans. 3. The gods and your own courage have given us the victory. 4. This fair Italy will soon be ours. 5. Rome itself, that proud city, will be taken. 6. Those arms of yours will be stained with the best blood of Rome. 7. Those famous legions have been defeated. 8. Cross with me yonder mountains. 9. Those fierce enemies of the Romans, the Samnites, will welcome us. 10. Rome shall be the reward of valor. Forward!

278. VOCABULARY.

āer, āeris, n., air.
cantus, -ūs, n., singing, song.
dēlectō, 1, delight.
Dēmosthenēs, -is, n., Demosthenes, an Athenian orator.
dīvēs, -itēs, adj., rich. (167. 3.)
dō, dare, dēdi, datum, give.
ex-pūgnō, 1, take by storm, take.
firmō, i [firmus], make firm or steadfast, fortify, strengthen.
firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, firm.
improbus, -a, -um, adj., bad.
iterum, adv., a second time, again.
lātrō, 1, bark, bark at.

leggō, -ōnīs, r., legion.
maculō, 1, stain.
mox, adv., soon.
necessarius, -a, -um, adj., necess-
praudēa, -ae, f., booty, spoil.
Saguntum, -i, n., Saguntum, town in Spain.
Samnīs, -itēs, m. & f., a Samnite.
sanguis, -inis, n., blood.
silva, -ae, f., wood, forest.
socius, -ī, m., ally, associate.
superbus, -a, -um, adj., proud.
tenuis, -e, adj., thin, light.
trānscedō, 3, -ī, -sum, cross.

cantus, song, melody, whether of the voice of man, of birds, or of musical instruments.
carmen, song, as melody, and also in a wider sense; often with reference to the composition. Hence, a poem.

1 Prōcēdite.
2 It must not be supposed that distinctions in synonymous words are always observed in usage.
CHAPTER XLII. 1.

PRONOUNS: RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE.

279. PARADIGMS: Quī, quis, aliquis.

RELATIVE: Quī, who, which, that.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. quī</td>
<td>qui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quod</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>quorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cui</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quod</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quä</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INTERROGATIVE: Quis, who, which, what?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. quis</td>
<td>qui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quid</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>quorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cui</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quid</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quä</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDEFINITE: Aliquis, some one, some, any one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. aliquis</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliqua</td>
<td>aliquid or-quod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. alicuius</td>
<td>alicuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. alicui</td>
<td>alicui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. aliquem</td>
<td>aliquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquid or-quod</td>
<td>aliquis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. aliquō</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. aliquī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. aliquōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. aliquibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. aliquōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. aliquibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe the feminine nominative singular, and the neuter nominative plural of aliquis, and compare them with corresponding forms of quis.
PRONOUNS.

2. *Aliquis* is used adjectively in the neuter form *aliquod*, and sometimes in the masculine and feminine forms. The same is true of *quidam* and *quisque* (4).

3. Besides the interrogative *quis* and its compounds, there is an interrogative adjective *qui* (*which, what?*) declined like the relative *qui*.

4. Besides *aliquis*, the most important indefinites are:

   *quidam*  *quaedam*  *quiddam*, or *quoddam*, *certain one, certain.*
   *quisquam*  (*wanting*)  *quidquam*, *any one (at all), no plural.*
   *quisque*  *quaeque*  *quidque*, or *quodque*, *each one, every.*

5. *Quidam*, *quisquam*, and *quisque* are declined like the simple pronouns. *Quidam* changes *m* to *n* before *d*; *quendam*, etc., *quordam*, etc.

6. *Aliquis*, *some one, any one* (without emphasis); *quisquam*, *any one at all* (emphatic), also in negative and interrogative sentences. *Quis* after *sí, nisi, nē*, and *num*, is indefinite, *any one*.

7. *Aliquis* means *some man*, I don’t know who; *quidam*, a *certain man*, whom I know, but don’t mean to describe.

280. Examine the following:

1. Puer qui vēnit, *the boy who came.*
2. Puelle quae vēnit, *the girl who came.*
3. Librī quōs legis, *the books which you read.*
4. Puellae quās vīdistī, *the girls whom you saw.*

Compare the relative in each of the above examples with the noun to which it refers (called the *antecedent*) in respect, first to gender, and then to number.

Look now at the case of the relative in each of the examples, and compare the English with the Latin. Plainly, the case of the relative has nothing to do with that of the antecedent. It may be the same or different.

281. Rule of Syntax.¹ — A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender and number*.

¹ As the *person* of the antecedent has no effect on the relative, it is wrong, though customary, to say “the relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.”
282. Examine the following:—

1. Ego quī vēnī, I who came.
2. Vōs quī vēnistis, you who came.

Observe now the person and number of the verb in these two examples, and in the first two given in 280.

283. Rule of Syntax.—The verb of which a relative pronoun is the subject agrees in person and number with the antecedent of the relative.

2.

284. Exercises.


II. 1. What have you in your hand? 2. By whom was the Roman forum adorned with the prows of ships? 3. We see the general whom you praise. 4. He is rich who is contented. 5. He will be praised whose courage saved our country. 6. We love those whose manners are pleasing. 7. The boy has something in his hand. 8. Certain labors are pleasant to us. 9. We are the same to-day that we were yesterday. 10. What things are brought to us from Africa?

1 Potest esse, can be.
2 See 212.
3 Ablative of quisque.
4 Of whom.
5 The same...that, or same...as, idem...qui.
3.

285. EXERCISES.

Before trying to do the following exercises, review the declension of irregular adjectives (200, 201), and write out the declension of quīdam, quisquam, and quisque.


II. 1. All animals that have blood have hearts. 2. We shall be the same1 to-morrow as1 we are to-day. 3. Is any2 animal more sagacious than the elephant?3 4. We have five fingers on each hand. 5. Those have hope who have nothing else.4 6. Many men build houses which they will never inhabit. 7. The moon sends upon the earth the light which she has received from the sun. 8. Cornelia had two sons, both of whom5 were killed. 9. Hector, by whose bravery many Greeks were slain, was himself killed. 10. Will not some friend relieve me of this burden?6

286. VOCABULARY.

acciō, 3, -ēpī, -ceptum [ad-acciō], take to, receive, accept. Carthāginiēnsis,-e, adj. [Carthāgīnīō], of Carthage, Carthaginian.
bonum, -i, n., good thing, blessing. clārus, -a, -um, bright, famous.

1 See p. 128, note 5. 2 See I. 4. 3 See 211, 212. 4 Aliud. 5 Of whom each. 6 See 128, 129.
contentus, -a, -um, adj., contented.
cor, cordis, n., heart.
crās, adv., to-morrow.
digitus, -i, m., finger.
duo, ae, -o, num. adj., two (311. 4).
expūgnō, 1 [pūgna], take, capture.
forum, -i, n., market-place, forum.
Gājus Duilius, -i, m., Caius Duilius.
Hector, -oris, m., Hector, chief of the Trojan heroes.
erī, adv., yesterday.
hodiē, adv., to-day.
labor, -ōris, m., labor.
malum, -i, n., bad thing, evil.
nēmō (-inis), m. s. v. [nē, homo], no one. For genitive and ablative use nūllius, nūllo.
parēns, -entis, m. & f., parent. (167. 1.)
proprius, -a, -um, adj., one's own.
prūdentia, -ae, f. [prūdens], foresight, sagacity, wisdom.
Remus, -i, m., Remus, brother of Romulus.
re-portō, 1, bring back.
Rhea Silvia, -ae, f., Rhea Silvia.
risus, -ūs, m. [rídeō], laughter.
Rōmulus, -i, m., Romulus, first king of Rome.
rōstrum, -i, n., prow of a vessel.
sidus, -cris, n., star, constellation.
Themistoclēs, -is, m., Themistocles, a famous Greek.
varius, -a, -um, adj., different, changeable, various.

CHAPTER XLIII. 1.

REVIEW OF PRONOUNS.

Review the paradigms.

287.

EXERCISES.

1. 1. Ídem es qui1 semper fuistī. 2. Hodīē eadem dictitāt quae1 herī. 3. Ecce domum quam aedificāvit Jōhanniculus. 4. Quīdam puer cachinnābat. 5. Íste homo, qui tō laudābat, est stultissimus. 6. Sua cuīque2 cārissima sunt. 7. Suī cuīque2 cārissimi sunt. 8. Cōram mē aliquis illam fābulam nārrābat. 9. Egēns est et is qui nōn satis habet, et is cui nihil satis est. 10. Beātus est qui3 nōn cupit quae3 nōn habet.

1 See p. 128, note 5.
2 Notice the order; quīque likes to stand after the reflexives.
3 The antecedent of the relative is often omitted when it is some form of is.
II. 1. She is the same that she always has been. 2. He will say the same things to-morrow as to-day. 3. Certain boys laughed out loud in school. 4. That friend of yours is a very wise man. 5. Those trees yonder are covered with leaves. 6. This man is praised by the citizens, that one is blamed. 7. The general himself led his brave soldiers. 8. The soldiers were led by the brave general himself. 9. Danger itself is pleasing to the brave. 10. Those who are most faithful to their friends are most dear to us.

2.

288.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quod non dedit fortuna, non eripit. 2. Liber est qui nulli turpitudini servit. 3. Quis est amicior fratris quam frater? 4. Saepe nihil est inimicus homini quam ipse sibi. 5. Saepe ii nobis nocent qui nos amant. 6. Eos qui aliorum rebus adversis non moventur omnès contemnunt. 7. Eos vincere difficile est, qui nihil timent. 8. Dæforme est de se ipsos praedicare. 9. Aliud bonum, aliud malum est. 10. Alteri laudem, alteri culpam dabat.

II. 1. Some one has done this. 2. Yesterday a story was read to us by some one. 3. The slave killed himself together with his master. 4. My friend will migrate with me into Gaul. 5. The inhabitants of the city were frightened by the coming of the enemy. 6. Some bear thirst easily, others hunger. 7. The fruits of this tree are pleasing to me, for they are sweet. 8. Those trees are higher than these houses. 9. These towers are high, those are low. 10. Those maidens, whose modesty is known, are praised by all.

1 See p. 128, note 5.
2 Plural. See 117.
3 See p. 130, note 3.
4 See 343.
5 See p. 87, note 4.
6 See p. 87, note 4.
7 See p. 87, note 3.
8 See p. 87, note 4.
9 See 275. 1 and 3.
10 A form of is.
289.

**VOCABULARY.**

ad-versus, -a, -um, adj., unfavorable.

cachinnō, 1, laugh aloud. Cf. ridicō.

cōram, prep. w. abl., in presence of.

cupīō, 3, -īvi, -itum, desire.

dē-formis, -e, adj. [forma], misshapen, ugly, base, disgraceful.

dictītō, 1 [dicō], keep saying.

ece, interj., lo! see! see there!

egēns, -entīs, adj., in want, needy.

ē-ripīō, 3, -ui, ērup tum [rapiō], snatch away; seize and bear off.

famēs, -is, f., hunger, famine.

frondōsus, -a, -um, adj. [frōns], covered with leaves, leafy.

frūctus, -ūs, m., fruit.

Jōhannicus, -i, m., little John, Johnny, Jack.

migrō, 1, move from one place to another, migrate.

modestia, -ae, r., modesty.

nārro, 1, tell, relate, report.

praedīcō, 1 [prae, before; dicō, -āre, make known], proclaim, boast. Cf. praedicō, predict.

satis, adv., enough.

servīō, 4 [servus], be a slave to, serve (w. dat.).

sitīs, -is, r., thirst. (154.)

tolero, 1, bear, endure.

turpītudō, -inis, r. [turpis], ugliness, baseness.

3.

290.

**COLLOQUIUM.**

Sōcratēs et Rhadamantus.

*R.* Tū, nisi fallor, es Sōcratēs, ille Athēnīensis.

*S.* Rectē dics. Ego sum Sōcratēs, filius, ut ferunt, Sōphronisciē.

*R.* Cūr dics ut ferunt? Nōnne re vērā es filius illūs?

*S.* Ipsē quidem nesciō, Ō Rhadamantē, cūjus sim filius.

*R.* Num1 mē lūdis, Sōcratēs? Cavētō. Nōnne tē sapien-

tem dīxit ōrāculum?

*S.* Ita est; sed quā re nōn intellegō, nisi quia mē ipse yea

inscium perspiciō.

1 This word is used in asking questions when the answer no is
expected. It is not to be translated.
R. Quō modo aetātem dēgisti?

S. Māgnā ex parte loquēbar māximēque dē virtūte quacēbam.

S. Ēheu! Rhadamanthe, istūs reī sum īnscius, nam mihi alas!

explicāre poterat nēmō.

R. Minimē sapiēns, Sōcratēs, ū mihi vidēris. At quid hoc locō tibi est in animō facere?

S. Ante omnia, sī vidēbitur, cum Homērō velim et Ulixe et aliis clāriissimis Graeciae principibus loquī.

R. Apage igitur ad istās mānēs.

4.

291. FOR TRANSLATION.

THE BATTLE OF MARATHON, B.C. 490.

Hŏc in tempore nūlla cīvitās Athēniēnsibus auxiliō fuit praeter Plataēnsēs. Ea mīlle mīsit militum. Itaque hōrum adventū decem nūlia armātōrum completā sunt, quae manus mirābili flagrābat pūgnandī cupiditāte. Quō factum est ut plūs quam collēgae Miltiādēs valēret. Ējus ergō auctōritāte impulsī Athēniēnsēs cōpiās ex urbe ēdūxĕrunt locōque idōneō castra fēcērunt. Deinde postĕrō dīe proelium commīsērunt. Dātis, etsi nōn aequum locum vidēbat suīs,

1 Auxiliō fuit, was for assistance = assisted. See 344.

2 Supply cīvitās.

3 Armātōrum (participle as noun), of armed men.

4 Quō factum est, by which it was brought about = the result was.

5 Plūs . . . valēret, had more influence.

6 Impulsī (participle from im pellō) prompted.

7 Locō = in locō.

8 Aequum, favorable.

9 Supply militibus.
CHAPTER XLIV. 1.

COMPOUNDS OF Sum.

1. **Possum.** *posse, potui, —, be able, can.*

Possum is compounded of *potis, able*, and *sum. Potis* is everywhere shortened to *pot*; then *t* is changed to *s* before *s*, and *f* is dropped after *t*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR.</td>
<td>SINGULAR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL.</td>
<td>PLURAL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> I am able, can, etc.</td>
<td><strong>Imper.</strong> I was able, could, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possum</td>
<td>possin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potes</td>
<td>possīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potest</td>
<td>possit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possunt</td>
<td>possint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong> I shall be able, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poterō</td>
<td>possem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poterimus</td>
<td>possēmus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1. *Eōque magis, and the more.*
2. *Subsidio: cf. auxiliō, first line, and note.*
3. *Venirent, should come.*
5. *Tantō plus valuerunt, were so much superior.*
7. *Prōfigārint, they routed.*
9. *Pūgnā: ablative after the comparative nōbilius. (212.)*
10. *From prōsternō.*
COMPONDS OF **Sum**.

**Perf.** *I have been able, could, etc.*

\[
\begin{array}{ccccc}
\text{potuĩ} & \text{potuimus} & \text{potuerim} & \text{potuerĩmus} \\
\end{array}
\]

**Plur.** *I had been able, could have, etc.*

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{potueram} & \text{potuerāmus} & \text{potuissem} & \text{potuissēmus} \\
\end{array}
\]

**Fut. Perf.** *I shall have been able, etc.*

\[
\begin{array}{cc}
\text{potuerō} & \text{potuerīmus} \\
\end{array}
\]

**Infinitive.**

Pres. *posse, to be able.*  Perf. *potuiisse, to have been able.*

293. **Prōsum,** prōdesse, prōfuĩ, ——, benefit.

Prōsum is compounded of prō (old form of prō), *for,* and sum. The *d* of prō is retained before *e.*

**Indicative.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. I benefit, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prō-sum</td>
<td>prō-sumus</td>
<td>prō-sim</td>
<td>prō-sim̄sus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prō-ēs</td>
<td>prō-ēstis</td>
<td>prō-sīs</td>
<td>prō-sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prō-ēst</td>
<td>prō-sunt</td>
<td>prō-sit</td>
<td>prō-sint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp. prō-eram</td>
<td>prō-erāmus</td>
<td>prō-ēssem</td>
<td>prō-ēssēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. prō-erō</td>
<td>prō-erimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. prō-fui</td>
<td>prō-fuimus</td>
<td>prō-fuerim</td>
<td>prō-fuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. prō-fueram</td>
<td>prō-fuerāmus</td>
<td>prō-fuissem</td>
<td>prō-fuiissēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P. prō-fuerō</td>
<td>prō-fuerīmus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative.**

Pres. prō-ēs, prō-ēste  Fut. prō-ēstō, prō-ēstōte

**Infinitive.**

Pres. prō-ēssee  Perf. prō-ēuisse

Fut. prō-futūrus esse

**Participle.**

Fut. prō-futūrus

The other compounds of sum are inflected like the simple verb.
294. Learn the tenses of the indicative, imperative, and infinitive of possum and prósum.

295. Rule of Syntax.—The compounds of sum, except possum and absum, all take the dative; but insum is often followed by in with the ablative, and intersum by inter with the accusative.

2.

EXERCISES.


II. 1. Cornelia was able to train her sons wisely. 2. All can be good citizens. 3. Hannibal was not able to take the city. 4. In Hannibal there was great cunning and bravery. 5. Hannibal was long absent from his own country. 6. He commanded armies in Spain and Italy. 7. He was present at many battles, and was the terror of the Romans. 8. He benefited his country in many ways. 9. But his enemies in his own land injured him. 10. Scipio defeated him in battle in Africa. 11. He survived this defeat many years. 12. His name will never lack renown.

1 For him. 2 See 47. 3 Compare auxiliō, 291, first line, and note. 4 Ways = things. See 259, 260. 5 Ablative without in. 6 Accusative. 7 Renown will never be wanting to his name.
297. **VOCABULARY.**

-ad-sum, -esse, aëfui, be away; absent (ā or ab w. abl.).
ad-sum, -esse, fui (also aëfui), be present, stand by, side with.
dē-sum, -esse, -fui, be wanting, lack.
in-sum, -esse, -fui, be in, among.
inter-sum, -esse, -fui, be present at, among.
ob-sum, -esse, -fui, be against, opposed to, injure.
possum, posse, potui, be able, can.
prae-sum, -esse, -fui, be before, at the head of, command.
prō-sum, prōd-esse, prō-fui, be useful, benefit.
super-sum, -esse, -fui, remain over, survive, exist.

calliditās, -ātis, f. [callidus], shrewdness, cunning.
cāsus, -īs, m. [cadō, fall], falling down, mischance, misfortune.
clādēs, -īs, f., destruction, defeat.
dūō, adv., long, a long time.
duēcis, -ē, adj., sweet, pleasant. Cf. suāvis.
fāna, -ae, f., rumor, fame, renown.
ne-que, conj., and not, nor; neque ... neque, neither ... nor.
parō, I, make ready, prepare, get.
patria, -ae, f., native land, country.
praesidium, -i, n. [praer, sedeō], defence, help, garrison.
praestāns, -tis, adj. [praestō, stand before], pre-eminent, distinguished.

---

**CHAPTER XLV. 1.**

**DEPONENT VERBS.**

**FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.**

298. Deponent verbs have the forms of the passive voice with the meaning of the active. There are dependents of each of the four regular conjugations:

Admīrāmur opera Deī, we admire the works of God.
Miserōs tuēbimur, we shall protect the wretched.
Audī multa, loquere paucha, listen much, say little.
Caesar prōvinciam sortītus est, Caesar obtained (by lot) a province.
299. Review the passive indicative, imperative, and infinitive of amō and moneō. (86, 112).

The principal parts of deponent verbs are thus given:

admíror, admírāri, admírātus (sum).
tueor, tuēri, tuitus (sum).
loquor, loquí, locūtus (sum).
sortior, sortīri, sortītus (sum).

300. EXERCISES.


II. 1. Who does not admire the beauty of the stars? 2. Other nations accompanied the Cimbri across the Rhine. 3. They wandered far and wide through Gaul and Spain. 4. The Romans wondered at the great bodies of the Germans. 5. Certain animals imitate human voices. 6. We were contemplating that beautiful likeness. 7. The general promised the soldiers a great reward. 8. He is a bad man who does not respect any one. 9. Children respect their parents, slaves fear their master.

301. VOCABULARY.

admíror, 1, wonder at, admire.
Alexander, -dri, m., Alexander, king of Macedon.
beneficium, -ī, n., benefit, favor.
caelum, -ī, n., sky, heavens.

Cimbri, -ōrum, m., Cimbri, a German tribe.
comitor, 1 [comes, -itis], accompany, attend.
cōn-fiteor, 2, -fessus, confess.

1 Longē lātēque.
2 Not accusative.
3 Is.
4 Not any one = no one.
DEONENT VERBS.

contemplor, 1, look at, observe.
cursus, -üs, m. [currō, run], running, course.
Dārēus, -i, m., Darius, Persian king.
dominor, 1 [domīnus], be a lord and master, rule.
facius, -öris, n. [fació], deed, crime. Cf. seclus.
Germānus, -a, -um, adj., German.
imitor, 1, imitate.
magnitūdō, -inis, f. [māgnus], greatness.
mercōr, 2, be worthy of, deserve.
per, prep. w. acc., through, by.
polliceor, 2, promise.
pulchritūdō, -inis, f. [pulcher], beauty.
stella, -ae, f., star.
tecor, 2, tuitus and tātus, watch, defend. Cf. dēfendō.
vagor, 1, go to and fro, wander.
vastō, 1, lay waste, ravage.
verecor, 2, reverence, respect.

sidus (286), a star, a great star, a constellation.
stella, a star as a bright heavenly body.

2.

COLLOQUIUM.

PATER ET FILIOLUS.

P. Ades, mī filiōle, et mīli libellum ostentā.

F. Ēcēcum, cāre pater, sī libellum Latīnum vidēre cupis.

P. Quod pēnsum tibi hodiē imperāvit praeceptor?

F. Pēnsum verbōrum dēpōnentium quae ad conjugātiōnem dēponent prīmam atque secundam pertinent.

P. Quam ob rem sic appellantur ista verba?

F. Quia formam activam et significātiōnem passīvam plērumque dēposuērunt. Sic nōs praeceptor doceuit.

P. Quod autem pēnsum in erāstīnum diem imperāvit praeceptor?

F. Ad hāce addidit praeceptor alia dēpōnentia. At tū, mī pater, Latīnae linguae jam puer studēbās?
CHAPTER XLVI. 1.

DEPONENT VERBS.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

303. Examine the following:—

1. Útor vestrā beneficītāe, I avail myself of (use) your kindness.
2. Abūtītur patientīā nostrā, he abuses our patience.
3. Lūx quā fruimur ā Deō nōbīs datur, the light which we enjoy is given us by God.
4. Fungor vice cōtīs, I serve as (discharge the office of) a whetstone.
5. Māgnā praedā potītus est, he got great booty.
6. Lacte et carne vescēbantur, they lived upon milk and flesh.

Compare the translation of the examples with the Latin. Observe that the direct object of the verb, or of the preposition closely connected with the verb in English, is represented in Latin by the ablative case.

304. Rule of Syntax.—The deponents Útor, frutor, fungor, potior, vescor, and their compounds, take the ablative.

305. Examine the following:—

1. Meminit praeteritōrum, he remembers the past.
2. Haec ōlim meminisse juvābit, to remember these things will one day give pleasure.
3. Tōtam causam oblītus est, he forgot the whole case.
4. Tōtus causae oblītus est, he forgot the whole case.

Observe that in the above examples the genitive is used in 1 and 4, the accusative in 2 and 3.

306. Rule of Syntax. — Verbs of remembering and forgetting take the genitive or accusative.

1. Neuter pronouns and adjectives are commonly put in the accusative. Recordor regularly takes the accusative.

307. Review the passive indicative, imperative, and infinitive of regō and audiō. (180, 223).

308. Exercises.

I. 1. Sūla urbem Rōmam armātus ingressus est. 2. Aθē-
miēnsium dux māximam adeptus est glōriam. 3. Alexander
Māgnus in Asian profectus est. 4. Eum multī et nōbilēs
virī secūti sunt. 5. Quās injūriās passus es oblīvisce.
6. Beneficia quae accēpit non oblīviscemur. 7. Quod
beneficiūm accēpit id oblīvisceitur. 8. Omnia patī
discimus. 9. Cicerō māgnā cum glōriā consulātū fāuctus est. 10. Lūx
qua fruimur dōnum est Deī.

II. 1. Alexander and his companions entered Asia.
2. They suffered both hunger and thirst. 3. He obtained
great glory by his victories. 4. He did not forget the words
of his master. 5. For he had been the pupil of a wise man.
6. The soldiers follow their general. 7. They are bad
men who forget benefits. 8. We can learn to endure all
things. 9. Who does not enjoy the light which is given
us by God? 10. The boys faithfully discharged their duty.

309. Exercises.

I. 1. Caesar, Pompēius, Crassus, imperium inter sē partitī
sunt. 2. Caesar Galliam provinciam sortitus est. 3. Sae-

1 Armēd. 2 Imperative. 3 Present infinitive of patīōr.
4 Et. 5 Iī. See 270. 2.

II. 1. Soldiers often try the fortune of war. 2. The leaders had divided among themselves the property\(^1\) of the enemy. 3. The Rhône rises not far from the sources of the Rhine. 4. The Rhine, which rises in the Alps, flows into the ocean. 5. The best friends share perils with friends. 6. Who possessed the kingdom after Alexander? 7. We will make trial of our valor. 8. They got possession of the camp of the enemy. 9. Who gets by lot Sicily (as) his province?\(^2\)

310. VOCABULARY.

adipiscor, 3, adeptus, get, obtain. Cf. potior.
castra, -ōrum, n. (pl.), camp.
Crassus, -i, m., Crassus, a rich Roman, contemporary of Caesar.
ex-perior, 4, expertus, make trial of, test.
frōns, frontis, f., brow, forehead.
fruor, 3, fruitus and frūctus, enjoy.
fungor, 3, fūnctus, perform, discharge.
imperium, -i, n. [imperō], command, authority, power.
ingredior, 3, gressus [gradior], enter.
mentor, 4, iis, deceive.
obliviscor, 3, oblitus, forget.

ōceanus, -i, m., ocean.
officium, -i, n., duty.
optimē, adv., most excellently, best.
orior,\(^3\) 4, ortus, rise, appear, begin.
partior, 4 [pars], divide, share.
patior, 3, passus, bear, suffer.
Pompēius, -ōi, m., Pompey, a celebrated Roman general.
postēa, adv., afterwards.
potior, 4, become master of, get. Cf. adipiscor. [march.
proficiscor, 3, -fectus, set out, prōvincia, -ae, f., province.
rēgnō, -i, n., kingdom.
sequor, 3, secūtus, follow.
sortior, 4, draw lots, obtain by lot.
Sūlla, -ae, m., Sulla, a Roman general and statesman.

\(^1\) Compare I. 5. \(^2\) Predicate accusative. \(^3\) See vocab. p. 247.
### CARDINALS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardinal</th>
<th>Numerals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>80.</td>
<td>octoginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90.</td>
<td>nonaginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100.</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101.</td>
<td>centum unus; or centesimus, primum; or centesimus et primum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200.</td>
<td>ducenti, -ae, -a ducentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300.</td>
<td>trecenti trecentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.</td>
<td>quadringenti quadringentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500.</td>
<td>quingenti quingentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600.</td>
<td>sescenti sescentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700.</td>
<td>septingenti septingentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800.</td>
<td>octingenti octingentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900.</td>
<td>nongenti nongentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000.</td>
<td>milles millesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,000.</td>
<td>duo milia bis millesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100,000.</td>
<td>centum milia centies millesimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ORDINALS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ordinal</th>
<th>Numerals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>80.</td>
<td>octogésimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90.</td>
<td>nongésimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100.</td>
<td>centésimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101.</td>
<td>centésimus primum, or centésimus et primum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200.</td>
<td>ducentésimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300.</td>
<td>trecentésimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.</td>
<td>quadringentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500.</td>
<td>quingentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600.</td>
<td>sescentésimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700.</td>
<td>septingentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800.</td>
<td>octingentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900.</td>
<td>nongentesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000.</td>
<td>millesimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Cardinal numbers** answer the question *how many?* Ordinals, which in order?

2. The cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum*, inclusive, are indeclinable: *quattuor hominés, four men; quattuor hominum, of four men.*

3. *Unus* is declined like *bonus*, except that it has genitive and dative singular *ünus, üni*, like *alius* (201).

4. **Duo** and *tréś* are thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>Neutral</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>Neutral</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MASC.</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duae</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trés</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>duorum</td>
<td>duarum</td>
<td>duorum</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>trium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>duabus</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>duós, duo</td>
<td>duās</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trés</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>duóbis</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duóbis</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. The hundreds, *ducenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

6. **Mille** is indeclinable in the singular, and is sometimes an adjective and sometimes a noun: *mille hominés, a thousand men; mille hominum, a thousand (of) men.* The plural has the forms *milia, milium, milibus,* and is always a noun: *tria milia hominum, three thousand men (three thousands of men).*
7. The ordinals are declined like **bonus**.
8. Other kinds of numerals are the distributives: **singulī**, -ae, -a, *one each*, **bīnī**, -ae, -a, *two each*, etc.; and the numeral adverbs: **semel**, once, **bis**, twice, etc.

**312. Examine the following:**
1. Decem annōs Trōja oppūgnābatur, Troy was besieged for *ten years*.
2. Turris alta est centum pedēs, the tower is a *hundred feet high*.

The accusative annōs denotes duration or extent of time; pedēs, extent of space. The accusative, then, is used to answer the question *how long?* or *how far?* (in time or space), and may be called the **Accusative of Extent**.

**313. Rule of Syntax. — Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.**

**314. Exercises.**
2. Alexander Māgnus tredecim annōs rēgnāvit.
3. Templum Dīānæc quadringentōs quīnquāgintā pedēs longum et ducentōs vīgintī pedēs lātum erat.
4. Annum spatium trecentōrum sexāgintā quīisque diērum est.
5. Duodecim sunt mēnsēs.
7. Diēs vīgintī quattuor hōrās habet.
8. Rōmānōrum veterum annus decem mēnsēs habēbat; Mārtius erat prīmus, December decimus.
9. Aut tertius decimus aut quintus decimus diēs mēnsis Īdūs nōminābatur.

II. 1. Romulus, the first king of Rome, reigned thirty-seven years.
2. This house is fifty-nine feet long and forty-eight feet wide.
3. The river is fourteen feet deep and ninety-two feet wide.
4. With the ancient Romans September was the seventh month; with us September is the ninth month.
5. The Roman consuls held power for one year.

---

1 See p. 143, note.  
2 **Apud**, with accusative.
6. In the five hundred and fiftieth year of the city Scipio was consul. 7. Five and twenty languages were known to King Mithridates. 8. In the first month of the year there are thirty-one days. 9. A Roman legion had five thousand foot-soldiers and three hundred horse-soldiers.

315. **VOCABULARY.**

- **annus, -i, m.**, year.
- **auris, -is, f.**, ear.
- **December, -bris, m.** [decem], December. Often as adj.
- **Diāna, -ae, f.**, Diana, goddess of the chase. [as adj.]
- **Februārinus, -i, m.**, February. Oft.
- **Īdūs, -um, n., plur., the Ædes of the month.** (244. 1.)
- **lingua, -ae, f.**, tongue, language.
- **Mārtius, -i, m.** [Mārs], March. Often as a j.
- **Mithridātēs, -is, m.**, Mithridates, king of Pontus.
- **ōs, āris, n., mouth, face.**
- **September, -bris, m.** [septem], September. Often as adj.
- **spatium, -i, n., room, space, period**

---

**CHAPTER XLVIII. 1.**

316. **IRREGULAR VERBS.**

- **Volō, velle, voluī, —, be willing, will, wish.**
- **Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, be unwilling, will not.**
- **Mālō, mālle, māluī, —, be more willing, prefer.**

**INDICATIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>1st pers.</th>
<th>2nd pers.</th>
<th>3rd pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRES.</td>
<td>volō</td>
<td>nōlō</td>
<td>mālō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vis</td>
<td>nōn vis</td>
<td>māvis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vult</td>
<td>nōn vult</td>
<td>māvult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>nōlumus</td>
<td>mālumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>nōn vultis</td>
<td>māvultis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>nōlunt</td>
<td>mālunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPER.</td>
<td>volēbam</td>
<td>nōlēbam</td>
<td>mālēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT.</td>
<td>volam</td>
<td>nōlam</td>
<td>mālam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERF.</td>
<td>voluī</td>
<td>nōluī</td>
<td>māluī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUP.</td>
<td>volueram</td>
<td>nōlueram</td>
<td>mālueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>voluerō</td>
<td>nōluerō</td>
<td>māluerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IRREGULAR VERBS: Volō, Nōlō, Mālō. 147

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>velim</th>
<th>nōlim</th>
<th>mālim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vellīs</td>
<td>nōlīs</td>
<td>mālīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velit</td>
<td>nōlit</td>
<td>mālit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velīmus</td>
<td>nōlīmus</td>
<td>mālīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vellītis</td>
<td>nōlītis</td>
<td>mālītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velint</td>
<td>nōlint</td>
<td>mālint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imper.</td>
<td>vellēm</td>
<td>nōllem</td>
<td>māllem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vellēs</td>
<td>nōlēs</td>
<td>mālēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vellet</td>
<td>nōllet</td>
<td>māllet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vellēmus</td>
<td>nōllēmus</td>
<td>māllēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vellētis</td>
<td>nōllētis</td>
<td>māllētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vellent</td>
<td>nōllent</td>
<td>māllent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>voluerim</td>
<td>nōluerim</td>
<td>māluerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>voluissem</td>
<td>nōluisse</td>
<td>māluisse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres. (Wanting)</th>
<th>nōlī</th>
<th>(Wanting)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nōlīte</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. (Wanting)</td>
<td>[nōlītō, etc.]</td>
<td>(Wanting)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INFINITIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>velle</th>
<th>nōlle</th>
<th>mālle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>voluisse</td>
<td>nōluisse</td>
<td>māluisse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARTICIPE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>volēns</th>
<th>nōlēns</th>
<th>(Wanting)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

317. Learn the tenses of the indicative and infinitive of volō, nōlō, and mālō, and the present imperative of nōlō.

2.

318. EXERCISES.

amō, love, not implying and not excluding esteem; the common word.
diligō, love selfishly and with esteem; more restricted in meaning than amō.

volō means both less and more than wish, namely, consent and will; very much used.
dēsiderō means wish ardently, with the notion (which volō has not) of lacking or missing the thing much desired; more restricted in meaning than volō.

3.

FOR TRANSLATION.

Multī hominēs volunt quidem rēctē facere, sed nōn faciunt; nam velle et facere nōn idem est. Saepe homo rēctē agere vult, sed vīrēs dēsunt. Multī peccātā suā excūsāre quam dēpōnere mālunt. Saepe aliēna peccāta vituperāre quam nostra corrigere mālumns. Multī suā sorte nōn sunt contentū, sed aliēna appetere mālunt. At cūr nōn fēliciter vīvere māvis? Fēlix is est qui rēctē agere vult rēctēque agit.

---

CHAPTER XLIX. 1.

321. THE IRREGULAR VERB Ferō.

Ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum: bear, carry, endure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. ferō</td>
<td>ferimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fers</td>
<td>fertis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fert</td>
<td>ferunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imper.</td>
<td>ferēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>feram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tuli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>tuleram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>tulerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. feram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imper. ferrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. tulerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup. tulissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ferō
ferimur
feris, or-ae
feriminī
fertur
feruntur
ferēbar
ferar
lātus sum
lātus eram
lātus erō
ferar
ferrē
lātus sim
lātus essem
### IMPERATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. fer₁</td>
<td>[ferre]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. fertō</td>
<td>fertōte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fertō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>feruntō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Ferre</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Tulisse</th>
<th>Fut.</th>
<th>Lātūrus esse</th>
<th>Lātum īrī</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ferre</td>
<td>Fertōte</td>
<td>Lātus esse</td>
<td>Lātum īrī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PARTICIPLES.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Ferēns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ferēns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fut.</th>
<th>Lātūrus</th>
<th>Ger.</th>
<th>Ferendus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lātūrus</td>
<td>Ferendus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### GERUND.

- G. ferendī
- D. ferendō
- Ac. ferendum
- Ab. ferendō

### SUPINE.

- Ac. lātum
- Ab. lātū

### 322.

Compounds of ferō are conjugated like the simple verb. Observe the changes suffered by certain of the prepositions in the following:

- **ab-** auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum.
- **ad-** adferō, adferre, attulī, allātum (adl).
- **com-** cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum (conl).
- **dis-** differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum.
- **ex-** efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum.
- **in-** īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum (inl).
- **ob-** offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum.
- **sub-** sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum.

### 323.

Learn the tenses of the indicative, the imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of ferō.

---

¹ For fere; dicō, dūcō, faciō, ferō, have imperative present second singular dīc, dūc, fac, fer.
IRREGULAR VERBS: Ferō.  

324. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Aufert, auferetur. 2. Auferet, auferētur. 3. Abs-
tulit, ablātus est. 4. Cōnferre, cōnferri. 5. Cōnferunt,
cōnferuntur. 6. Cōnferent, cōnferentur. 7. Contulerant,
collātī erant. 8. Distulērunt, dīlātī sunt. 9. Distulerit,
dīlātus erit. 10. Distulisse, dīlātus esse. 11. Differēbant,
differēbantur.

II. 1. We bear, we are borne. 2. We were bearing, we were borne. 3. We have borne, we have been borne. 4. We shall bear, we shall be borne. 5. We had borne, we had been borne. 6. Bear thou, bear ye. 7. To offer, to be offered. 8. Ye shall offer, ye shall be offered. 9. To have offered, to have been offered. 10. Ye offer, ye will offer. 11. Ye are offered, ye will be offered.

325. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ferte patienter labōrēs. 2. Bene ferre māgnam fortūnam disce. 3. Ferte patienter quae mūtārī nōn possuāt. 4. Nōn omnis ager qui seritur fert frūgēs. 5. Be-
nīgnum rēgem nōn tulistis; jam ferum et barbarum fertōte. 6. Nōlite differre pēnum quod hodiē facere potestis. 7. Im-
perātor militibus dēfessis auxilium attulit. 8. In unum locum
collātum est ex agrīs omne frūmentum. 9. Lōnga nōbīs est omnis mora quae gaudia differit. 10. Caesar omnibus qui contrā sē arma tulerant veniam dedit.

II. 1. They bore labor with patience. 2. They did not endure a good king; now they are enduring a bad one. 3. We cannot put off our tasks. 4. We shall learn to bear our good fortune well. 5. They bore with patience that which they could not change. 6. The robbers bore off the

---

1 What might be substituted for the adverb? See 144, 145.
2 See p. 130, note 3.  
3 Tēdiōsus.  
4 Omit.  
5 Id.
booty which they had seized. 7. Do not\(^1\) bring me that which I do not want. 8. Delays which postpone our joy are always tedious. 9. The townsfolk carried their all\(^2\) with them out of the town.

326. VOCABULARY.

ad-ferō (afferō), adferre, at-tuli, adlātum, bear to, bring.
an-ferō, auferre, abstuli, ablā-tum [ab(s)], bear off; carry away.
auxilium, -i, n., help, aid.
barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign, barbarous.
benīgnus, -a, -um, adj., kind, good.
cōnferō, cōnferre, contuli, collātum (conlātum), bring together, collect; sē cōnferre, be-take one's self.
differō, differre, distuli, dilā-tum [dis, apart], bear apart, scatter, put off, postpone.
efferō, efferre, extuli, elātum [ex], bear out, bring forth.
ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, cruel.
frūgēs, -um, f., plur., fruits.
gaudium, -i, n. [gaudeō, re-joice], joy, delight.
in-ferō, inferre, intuli, illātum
(inlātum), bear in, cause; bellum inferre, to make war, w. dat.
jam, adv., already, now, at last.
mōra, -ae, f., delay.
offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātum
[ob, before], present, offer.
patienter, adv. [patiēns], pa-tiently, with patience.
serō, 3, sévi, satum, sow, plant.
suffero, suffere, sustuli, sub-
lātum [sub], undergo, endure.
venia, -ae, f., indulgence, kind-
ness, mercy.

CHAPTER I. 1.

327. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Eō, īre, ī [īvi], ītum, go.
Fiō, fierī, factus sum (supplies pass. to faciō), be made, become.

INDICATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Eō.</th>
<th></th>
<th>Fiō.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td>īmus</td>
<td>fiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īs</td>
<td>ītis</td>
<td></td>
<td>fīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>ēunt</td>
<td></td>
<td>ńfīt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) Compare I. 6.  \(^2\) Their all, omnia sua.
329. EXERCISES.


II. 1. That has been done which you wished. 2. My friends, you become wiser by old age. 3. Men never become good by chance. 4. Who will cross the river with me?³ 5. The generals crossed the mountains with a large part⁴ of their forces. 6. Light become the burdens that are patiently borne. 7. Our friends have gone away, but they will return. 8. The people passed by many worthy men. 9. The inhabitants of the city went out with their horses and wagons. 10. The generals return to⁵ their country with prisoners and booty. 11. Do not⁶ cross the very deep river.

2.

330. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Septíês Máris, qui Címbróes et Teutónés duóbus ácerrímís proelíis vérít, cónsul factus est. 2. Sócratés æquó animó diem suprénum obiit. 3. Áriovísti cópiæ in trá annós quattuordecim tectum nón subierant. 4. Autumnná multae avés in aliás terrás profíciscuntur, at véré novó

¹ Feré is often thus placed between an adjective and its noun.
² Nón nunquam, not never = sometimes.
³ See 265. 3.
⁴ See p. 21, note 1.
⁵ To = into.
⁶ See 318. 1. 5 and 6.
IRREGULAR VERBS: Eō, Fīō.

redeunt. 5. Abeunt omnia unde orta sunt. 6. Alexander cōnsilīō fortitūdineque omnēs anteībat; omnēs labōrēs subībat.

II. 1. In winter the days become shorter and the nights longer. 2. After the battle many perished of cold and hunger. 3. Cicero was made consul by the Romans. 4. By the prudence (cōnsilium) and valor of Scipio, Hannibal was compelled to return into Africa. 5. We ought to meet our last day with equanimity. 6. Alexander came off victorious from all his battles.

331.

VOCABULARY.

ab-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, go off, come off, go away. (327. 2.)
eaquae, -a, -um, adj., level, equal; calm.
ante-eō, -ire, -ii, —, go before, surpass.
apud, prep. with acc., with, in, near, among.
Ariovistus, -i, m., Ariovistus, king of a German tribe.
autumnus, -i, m., autumn.
cōgō, 3, -égī, -ectum [com, agō], drive together; compel.
cōpia, -ae, f., power, abundance, wealth; plur. troops, forces.
dēbeō, 2, -ui, -itum, owe, ought.
ex-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, go out.
ferē, adv., nearly, for the most part.
intrā, prep. with acc., within.
Marius, -i, m., Marius, a famous Roman general.
nāscor, 3, nātus, be born.

ob-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, go towards, meet.
Parus, -i, m., Paros, an island in the Ægean Sea. (11. 4.)
per-eō, -ire, -ii, —, perish.
praeter-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, go by, pass by, omit.
re-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, return.
re-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, carry back.
rūrsus, adv. [re-vorsus, re-vertō], turned back, back, again.
septīes, num. adv. [septem], seven times.
sub-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, go under, enter, undergo.
tectum, -i, n. [tegō, cover], covering, shelter, roof.
Teutōnēs, -um, m., the Teutons, a German tribe.
trāns-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, go over, cross.

1 See 260.
2 Compare I. 4.
3 Ablative.
4 Compare I. 1; also 47.
5 Compare I. 2.
6 Victor.
3.

332.

**COLOQUIUM.**

**TITYRUS ET MELIBOEUS.**

*T. Aliquis jânuam pulsat. I, puer, aperi jânuam.*

[*Meliboeus tristi vultu passibus tardis introit.*]

Salvē, amīce, diū mē nōn adīstī. Cūr iste vultus trīstis?

how do you do

*M. Eheu! mī Tityre, abeo ē meā patriā.*

*T. Cūr abīs? Quō abībis? Nōli relinquere haec arva duleia.*

leave fields

*M. Quid tībi vīs? Meōs agrōs militibus impīs dōnāvit what would you have me do Octāviānus.*

wicked has given


am undone

*T. Minimē, amīce; adī ad Octāviānum; ille est benignus, neque vult tē perīre. Tū agrōs recipīs.*

Tū agrōs recipīs.

*M. Parvae spēs mihi sunt redeundī; tamen ībō, ut tū monēs; Octāviānō ad pedēs mē prōiciam.*

*T. Et redībis in agrōs tuōs; redībit pāx aurea. Valē, mī Meliboecc, es bonō animō.*

keep up your courage

*M. Et tū valē, bone Tityre.*

CHAPTER LII. 1.

**PREPOSITIONS.**

333. Thus far several prepositions have been used in the exercises, some followed by the accusative and some by the ablative. These are the only cases in Latin that follow prepositions.

**PREPOSITIONS FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE.**

ä (ab, abs), away from, by.   ë (ex), out of, from.
absque, without.   prae, before, in comparison with.
cōram, in presence of.   prō, before, for.
cum, with.   sine, without.
dē, from, concerning.   tenus, as far as, up to.
1. In, meaning into, to, towards, for, that is after verbs denoting motion, takes the accusative.

2. In, meaning in, on, at, that is after verbs denoting rest, takes the ablative. See 334.

3. Sub, under, up to, after verbs of motion, takes the accusative; after verbs of rest, the ablative.

4. Remember that all prepositions except the ten mentioned, and in and sub, are followed by the accusative only.

**Expressions of Place.**

334. Examine the following: —

3. Ad montem, to the mountain.  10. Thūrīs, at (in) Thurii.
4. Ex agrīs, from the fields.  11. Carthāgīnī, at (in) Carthage.

Observe the ways of denoting the place in, on, at, to, from which. In English we always\(^1\) use a preposition with the noun of place, as the examples show. So in Latin (see examples 1–7), except with names of towns.\(^2\) For these a rule may be inferred from the examples 8–14.

335. Rule of Syntax. — With names of towns —

1. The place in or at which is expressed by the locative. (See 14, 2; 40; 175.)

2. The place to which, by the accusative without a preposition.\(^3\)

3. The place from which, by the ablative without a preposition.\(^4\)

---

\(^1\) Except in the case of the word home, after a verb of motion.

\(^2\) Names of small islands are often treated like names of towns.

\(^3\) This accusative may be called the Accusative of Limit, because it denotes the limit, or end, of motion.

\(^4\) This ablative is the ablative of separation. (128, 129, 130.)
336. Domus, home, house, and rūs, the country, have the construction of names of towns:

- domī, at home.
- domum, (to) home.
- domō, from home.

- rūrī, in the country.
- rūs, to (into) the country.
- rūre, from the country.

2.

337. EXERCISES.


II. 1. The consul set out from Rome with a large army. 2. We have removed from the city into the country. 3. Then the general retreated into Campania. 4. I have lived in Athens three years. 5. Tarquin remained at Cumae a long time. 6. Scipio defeated Hannibal at Zama. 7. Regulus returned from Africa to Rome. 8. Afterwards he was sent back from Rome to Carthage. 9. Caesar carried on war in Gaul eight years. 10. Cicero was born at Arpinum. 11. The consul proceeded to Athens with his army. 12. From Athens he sailed to Italy. 13. Do you remain (imperative) at home; I will return to the army. 14. Shall you come home soon?

1 From prōcēdō, perfect tense.
2 See I. 7, and 239.
3 See 313.
4 See 272. II. 6.
338. Vocabularv.
angustiae, -ärum, r., plur. [an-
gustus, narrow], narrow pass.
Cf. Eng. narrows.
appellō, 1, address, call, name.
Arpinum, i, n., Arpinum, a town in Italy.
Athēnae, -ärum, r., plur., Athens.
Carthāgō, -inis, r., Carthage, a city in Africa.
Coriolānus, -i, m., a surname of C. Marcus, a Roman consul.
Cāmae, -ärum, r., plur., Cuma, a town in Campania.
dē-migrō, 1, emigrate, remove.
dictātūra, -ae, r. [dictātor],
office of dictator, dictatorship.
dignitās, -ātis, r. [dignus,
worthy], worth, dignity, office.
ē-vādo, 3, ēvāsi, ēvāsum, go forth, escape.
infestus, -a, -um, adj., hostile,
troublesome, dangerous.
ōrātor, -ōris, m. [ōrō, speak,
plead], orator, ambassador.
Porsena, -ae, m., Porsena, an Etruscan king.
pro-fiteor, 2, -fessus [fateor],
acknowledge, confess, declare.
re-mittō, 3, -misi, -missum, send back.
sēdēs, -is, r. [sedeō, sit], seat, abode.
Tarquinus, -i, m., Tarquin, a Roman king.
trā-iciō, 3, -iēci, -iectum [trāns,
jaciō], throw across, pass over, cross.
tum, adv., then, at that time.
Zama, -ae, r., Zama, a town in Africa.

339. FOR TRANSLATION.
THE BATTLE OF CANNÆ, B.C. 216.

Hannibal in Āpūlia pervēnerat. Adversus eum Rōmā
profectā sunt duo cōnsulēs, Aemilius Paullus et Terentius
Varrō. Paullō¹ cunctātiō Fabī² magis placēbat; Varrō
autem, ferōx³ et temerārius, ācriōra sequēbātur cōnsilia.
Ambō cōnsulēs ad vīcum, qui Camae appellābatur, castra
commūnīvērunt. Ibi deinde Varrō invītō collēgā⁴ aciem in-
strūxit et sīgnum pūgnae dedit. Hannibal autem ita cōn-
stituerat aciem, ut Rōmānīs⁵ et⁶ sōlis radiī et ventus ab oriente

¹ For the case, see 343.
² Fabius Maximus, whose policy
had been one of prudence, or
rather, of extreme caution.
³ Impetuous.
⁴ His colleague unwilling =
against the wishes of his colleague.
See 412.
⁵ To the Romans, dative with
adversi.
⁶ Both.
pulverem adśäs 1 adversī essent. 2 Vīctus caesusque est Rōmānus exercitus; nusquam graviōre vulnerē afflictā est rēs pūblica.

[Continued on p. 177.]

---

CHAPTER LII.

ADDITIONAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

340. Examine the following:—

1. Alter cōnsulum, one of the consuls.
2. Ŭnus mīlitum, one of the soldiers.
3. Quis vestrum? who of you?
5. Satis pecūniae, enough (of) money.
6. Ŭnus ex mīlitibus, one of the soldiers.
7. Minimus ex illīs, the youngest of them.

The first five of the examples illustrate what is called the **Partitive Genitive**, the word in the genitive denoting a whole, and the word which it limits a part of that whole; 6 and 7 illustrate another way of expressing the partitive idea.

341. Examine the following:—

1. Catilīna fuit ingeniō malō, Catiline was (a man) of bad disposition.
2. Iccius summā nōbilitāte fuit, Iccius was (a man) of the highest rank.
3. Puer sēdecim annōrum, a boy of sixteen years.
4. Vestīs māgni pretī, a garment of great value.
5. Vir summæ virtūtis, a man of the highest courage.

The above are examples of the **Descriptive Ablative** and the **Descriptive Genitive**. Observe that in each instance the ablative or genitive is limited by an adjective, and that the adjective and noun together denote a quality or characteristic of that which is described.

---

1 Present participle of adflō. 2 Were an annoyance.
342. Examine the following:—

1. Rēgī servīō, I serve the king.
2. Cīvitātī prōdest, he benefits the state.
3. Caesārī placuit, it pleased Caesar.
4. Frātri persuādet, he persuades his brother.
5. Crēde mihi, believe me.

Observe that the verbs, which in English have a direct object, are followed in Latin by the dative (the case of the indirect object). Such verbs should be carefully noted as they occur in the exercises. They may be summed up in the following—

343. Rule of Syntax.—Many verbs signifying to please or displease, benefit or injure, command or obey, serve, resist, believe, threaten, persuade, and the like, take the dative.

344. Examine the following:—

1. Māgnō ūsui nostrīs fuit, it was of great service to our men.
2. Est mihi cūrae, it is (for) a care to me.
3. Equitātum auxiliō Caesārī mīserant, they had sent cavalry to aid Caesar (for aid to Caesar).
4. Quīnque coḥōrtes castrīs praesidiō relinquit, he leaves five cohorts to defend the camp (for defence to the camp).

Observe in each of the above sentences two datives, one translated (literally) with for, the other with to. In 1 and 2, ūsui and cūrae are like the predicate nominative, which is often used where we might expect this dative; in 3 and 4, auxiliō and praesidiō denote a purpose. This dative for which is sometimes called the Dative of Service. The two together are sometimes called the Double Dative.

Observe instances of the foregoing constructions as they occur in the exercises and reading lessons.
CHAPTER LIII.

DERIVATION.

345. Some derivations have been indicated in the vocabularies by separating the parts of compound words, and, beginning with 221, by putting words in brackets. The bracketed words, however, are not to be understood as the primitives or originals of the words against which they stand, as is customarily the case in lexicons and special vocabularies, but that they are connected with them in formation from a common root or stem. The habit of observing such relationships is the important thing. The following list is selected from previous vocabularies for further study of the subject:—

1. amō, love; amicus, loving, friendly; amīcitia, friendship; inimicus (for in-amicus), unfriendly, hostile.
2. ager, field, land, soil; agricola (colō, cultivate), one who cultivates the soil, farmer; agriculūra, cultivation of the soil, agriculture. Colō also means dwell, hence incola, inhabitant. Meaning of incolō?
3. cīvis, citizen; cīvilis, pertaining to a citizen; cīvitās, the condition of a citizen, or a body of citizens, state. Like cīvilis, form and define adjectives from the stems of puer and hostis.
4. regō, rule; rex (reges), ruler, king; regina, ruler, queen; regnum, kingdom; regnō, be king, reign; regula, rule.
5. faciō, do; facinus, thing done, deed; facilis (that may be done), easy; difficilis (for dis-facilis), not to be done, difficult.
6. nōscō, know; nōmen (that by which a thing is known), name; nōminō, v., name; nōbilis (that can be known), well known, noble, cf. facilis.
7. fuga, flight; fugiō, flee. libēr, adj., free; libērō, v., free. metus, n., fear; metuō, v., fear. laus, n., praise; laudō, v., praise. timor, n., fear; timeō, v., fear. discō, learn; discipulus, learner. dō, give; dōnum, gift. moveō, move; mōtus, motion. fluō, flow; fluvius, flūmen, stream, river. dominus, lord, master; domina, mistress; dominor, be master.
8. aurum, gold; aureus, of gold, golden. lignum, wood; ligneus, of wood, wooden.
ferrum, iron; ferreus, of iron, iron.
argentum, silver. Form an adjective from the stem of argen-
tum, and define it.
9. alō, nourish; alimentum (that which nourishes), food, pro-
visions.
moneō, remind; monumentum (that which reminds), monument.
ōruō, adorn; meaning of ōrnāmentum?
10. pulcher, beautiful; pulchritūdō, beauty.
fortis, brave; fortītūdō, bravery.
turpis, base; turpītūdō, baseness.
alts, high. Form a noun from the stem of altus, and define it.
11. īgnāvus (not busy), idle; īgnāvia, idleness.
memor, mindful; memoria (mindfulness), memory.
piger, lazy; pigritia, laziness.
prūdēns, wise, prudent; prūdentia, wisdom, prudence.
sapiēns, wise; sapientia, wisdom.
amīcus, friend; amīcitia, friendship.
Form a noun from the stem of inimīcus, and define it.
12. equus, horse; eques, horseman.
pēs (stem ped), foot; pedēs, foot-soldier.
13. arō, v., plough; arātrum, n. (thing to plough with), plough.
(rōdō, gnaw); rōstrum (that which gnaws), beak, snout, hence
beak of a ship.
14. vir, man; virtūs, manliness, virtue.
servus, slave; servitūs, slavery.
cōnsul, consul; cōnsulātus, office of a consul, consulship.
magister, master; magistrātus, office of a magister, magis-
tracy, also magistrate.
15. perīculum, danger; perīculōsus, full of danger, dangerous.
frōns, leaf; frondōsus, covered with leaves, leafy.
studium, zeal; meaning of studiōsus?
16. audēō, dare; audāx, daring.
rapiō, seize; rapāx, grasping.
teneō, hold; meaning of tenāx?
17. scribō, write; scripтор, writer.
vincō (vīctum), conquer; vīctor, conqueror.
dēfendō, defend; dēfēnsor, defender.
From stem of amō, love, form a word meaning lover; from stem
of audiō, hear, in the same way, a word meaning hearer.
18. ullus, any; n ullus, not any.
    scio, know; nescio, know not.
19. homo, man; human us (belonging to a man), human.
    mors, death; mortalis (belonging to death), mortal.
    alius, another; alienus (belonging to another), another's.
20. Observe also the force of the various prefixes, a, ad, de, dis, in,
    prae, pro, re, sub, etc., as in a-mitto, ac-cedo, de-scendo,
    di-mitto, in-fero, praemun, pro-cedo, re-fero, sub-eo, etc.

CHAPTER LIV. 1.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES: PRACTICE ON FORMS.

346. Learn the subjunctive of sum (73) and its compounds
    (292, 293).
    The chief use of the subjunctive is in subjoined, that is, de-
    pendent, clauses.

347. Examine the following:——

1. Audiō ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit, I hear where he is, has been
    or was, is going to be.
2. Audīvi ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit, I have heard where he is,
    has been or was, is going to be.
3. Audiam ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit, I shall hear where he is,
    has been or was, is going to be.
4. Audīverō ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit, I shall have heard
    where he is, has been or was, is going to be.
5. Audiēbam ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset, I heard where
    he was, had been, was going to be.
6. Audīvī ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset, I heard where he
    was, had been, was going to be.
7. Audīveram ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset, I had heard
    where he was, had been, was going to be.
Notice what tenses are used in the principal clauses of each of the preceding groups of examples. Those in the first group—the present, perfect definite, future, and future perfect—are called primary or principal tenses. Those in the second group—the imperfect, perfect indefinite, and the pluperfect—are called secondary or historical tenses.

Observe also that primary tenses of the subjunctive are used in the first four, secondary in the last three.

348. Rule of Syntax.—Primary tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses of the indicative, and secondary follow secondary.

Observe that the subjunctive in the foregoing examples is translated like the indicative.

349. Examine the following:—

1. Nēmō adest quīn sit fortis, no one is present who is not brave.
2. Quis adest quīn sit fortis? who is present who is not brave?
3. Nēmō dubitat quīn sit fortis, no one doubts that he is brave, or his being brave.
4. Nōn dubium est quīn sit fortis, there is no doubt that he is brave, or of his being brave.
5. Nōn dubitō quīn sit fortis, I do not doubt that he is brave, or his being brave.

Observe (1) that the subjunctive follows quīn; (2) that quīn is used after negative expressions and questions that expect a negative answer; (3) that the subjunctive clause with quīn (compounded of quī, who, and nē, not) may be variously rendered.

2.

350. Exercises.


---

1 That is, the perfect translated with have or has.
2 That is, the perfect translated without have or has.
fuissent fortēs? 6. Nēmō dubitāverat quīn adfuisset; ad-
fuissent. 7. Nōn est dubium quīn possit; possint; potuerit;
potuerint. 8. Quis dubitābat quīn posset? possent? potuis-
praefueris; praefueritis. 10. Quis dubitāverat quīn āfuisset?
āfuissent?

II. 1. I do not doubt that he is present; has been present;
is absent; has been absent. 2. Who doubted that he could?
they could? we could? you could? 3. They do not doubt
that he is at the head of (prāesum); has been at the head of.
4. Who has doubted his surviving? their surviving? 5. Who
doubted their injuring? having injured? 6. There is no
doubt that he can; we can; you can; they can. 7. There
was no doubt that he could; I could; they could.

3. 351. Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of amō (86)
and moneō (112).
1. Observe that in the active voice the imperfect subjunctive
can be formed readily from the present infinitive, and the pluper-
fect subjunctive from the perfect infinitive. Compare the perfect
subjunctive with the future perfect indicative.

352. Examine the following:—

Sē armant ut pūgnent, they arm themselves that they may fight,
in order that they may fight, to fight, so as to fight, in order to
fight, for the purpose of fighting.

Observe that the various equivalents of ut pūgnent have a
common notion or idea, that of purpose.

353. Rule of Syntax. — Ut with the subjunctive
may be used to denote a purpose, and may be vari-
ously translated.

354. Review the indicative and imperative of eō, go (327).
355. **EXERCISES.**


II. 1. He goes to see and praise. 2. They go for the purpose of seeing and praising. 3. We will go in order to see and praise. 4. Who will not go that he may see and praise? 5. You will go to see and praise. 6. They have gone to see and praise. 7. He has gone for the purpose of seeing and praising. 8. He went in order to see and praise. 9. Go (plur.) to see and praise. 10. He was going that he might see and praise. 11. Who doubts his having seen and praised? 12. No one doubted that they had seen and praised.

356. **EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Eī (eīs, mihi, nōbīs) imperat ut¹ —
   cōnētur, cōnentur, cōner, cōnēmur.

2. Eī (eīs, mihi, nōbīs) imperābat ut —
   cōnārētur, cōnārentur, cōnārer, cōnārēmur.

3. Quis dubitāt quīn —
   cōnātus sit, cōnātī sint, cōnātus sim, cōnātī simus?

4. Nēmō dubitābat quīn —
   cōnātus esset, cōnātī essent, cōnātus essem, cōnātī essēmus.

¹ Translate thus: He orders him to try (that he try); them to try (that they try).
5. Eum (eōs, mē, nōs) monet ut—
    tueātur, tueantur, tuēar, tueāmur.

6. Eum (eōs, mē, nōs) monēbat ut—
    tuērētur, tuērentur, tuērer, tuērēmur.

7. Quis dubitat quīn—
    tuitus sit, tuitū sint, tuitus sim, tuitī simus?

8. Nēmō dubitābat quīn—
    tuitus esset, tuitū essent, tuitus essem, tuitī essēmus.

II. 1. They will order him\(^2\) (them, me, us) to imitate.
2. They have ordered him (them, me, us) to imitate.
3. Who doubts his\(^3\) (their, my, our) having imitated?
4. They ordered him (them, me, us) to imitate. 5. Nobody doubted his (their, my, our) having imitated.
6. They advise him (them, me, us) to promise.
7. They advised him (them, me, us) to promise.
8. There was no doubt that he (they, I, we) had promised.

5.

357. Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of regō (180), audiō (223), capiō (235).

358. The conjunction ne, in order that not, that not, in order not to, so as not to, lest, is used to denote a negative purpose, just as ut denotes a positive purpose. See 352, 353.

359. **EXERCISES.**

**I.**

1. Eum (eōs) monet ut—
   regat, regātur, audiat, audiātur,
   regant, regantur, audiant, audiāntur.

2. Eum (eōs) monuit ut—
   regat, regātur, audiat, audiātur,
   regant, regantur, audiant, audiāntur.

3. Eum (eōs) monēbat ut—
   regeret, regerētur, audīret, audīrētur,
   regerent, regerentur, audērent, audīrentur.

\(^1\) Imitate the arrangement in I.  \(^2\) Dative.
\(^3\) That is, that he, they, I, we, have imitated.
4. Eum (eōs) monuit ut—
   regeret, regerētur, audīret, audīrētur,
   regerent, regerentur, audīrent, audīrentur.
5. Tē (vōs) monet nē—
   capiās, capiātis, capiāris, capiāminī.
6. Mē (nōs) monuit nē—
   capiam, capiāmus, capiar, capiāmur.
7. Mē (nōs) monēbat nē—
   caperem, caperēmus, caperer, caperēmur.
8. Mē (nōs) monuit nē—
   caperem, caperēmus, caperer, caperēmur.

II. 1. They advise him (them)—
   to lead, to be led, to find, to be found.
2. They warn him (them)—
   not to receive, not to be received.
3. They will advise him (them)—
   to lead, to be led, to find, to be found.
4. They were warning him (them)—
   not to lead, find, receive,
   not to be led, be found, be received.
5. Who doubted that he (they)—
   had led, had found, had received,
   had been led, been found, been received?

360. Learn the subjunctive of eō (327), and ferō (321).

361. EXERCISES.
I. 1. Mē hortātur ut eam; feram. 2. Eōs hortāmur ut
   eant; ferantur. 3. Vōs hortantur ut eātis; ferātis. 4. Eum
   hortātī sunt ut īret; ferret. 5. Mē hortātī sunt nē eam;
   feram. 6. Tē hortābantur nē īres; ferrēs. 7. Eōs hortātī
   erant ut īrent; ferrent. 8. Nōn dubium erat quīn īssent;
   tulissent. 9. Nōn est dubium quīn īerit; tulerit.
10. Nēmō dubitābat quīn īret; ferrētur.
II. 1. He commands that he (they, I, we) go; bear; be borne. 2. He was commanding that he (they, I, we) should go; bear; be borne. 3. There is no doubt of his (their, my, our) having gone; borne; been borne. 4. There was no doubt that he (they, I, we) had gone; borne; been borne.

7.

362. EXERCISES.


II. 1. The ambassadors beg the senate to render aid to their³ kingdom. 2. The ambassador begged the senate to render aid to his⁴ king. 3. Nobody doubts that Hannibal is brave. 4. Nobody doubted that Hannibal had fought bravely. 5. They did this that they might surround the enemy. 6. This they do in order to surround the enemy. 7. Scipio begs his wife not to carry his body back to Rome. 8. Scipio begged his wife not to carry his body back to Rome. 9. It turned out that the soldier received a wound on the head. 10. We will draw up the soldiers on a hill to try the fortune of war.

¹ Nē quis, lest any one = that no one.
² After verbs meaning to happen, to turn out, and the like, ut means that, but not in order that.
³ Sōus, because their means their own, and not of them.
⁴ Suus.
THE SUBJUNCTIVE: RELATIVE OF PURPOSE. 171

363. VOCABULARY.

circum-venīō, 4,-vēnī,-ventum, surround.
collīs, -is, m., kill. Cf. mōns.
cōnōr, 1, attempt.
cūrō, 1 [cūrā], care for, take care.
dī-mittō, 3,-mīsī,-mīssum, send away, send off.
eō-dīcō, 3,-dīxī,-dictum, speak out, declare, proclaim.
eō-venīō, 4,-vēnī,-ventum, come forth, turn out, happen. Cf. accīdō.
extrā, prep. w. acc., without, outside of. Cf. intrā.
frangō, 3, frēgī, fractum, break.
Hasdrubaľ, -alis, m., Hasdrubal, brother of Hannibal.
hortōr, 1, urge, encourage.
in-cīdō, 3,-cīdī,-cīsum [cādō], fall into, happen, befall.
Manlius, -i, m., Manlius, a Roman general.
mōnstrō, 1, show, point out.
ob-ligō, 1, bind, put under obligation, oblige.
oc-cīdō, 3,-cīdī,-cīsum [ob, caedō, cut], cut down, kill.
occupō, 1 [ob, capiō], take possession of, seize.
orbus, -a, -um, adj., bereaved, childless.
ōrō, 1 [ōs, mouth], pray, beg.
plēbs, -bis, r., the common people.
segnātus, -ās, m. [senex], council of elders, senate. (345. 14.)
sub-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, draw from under, draw up.
uxor, -ōris, r., wife. Cf. conjunx.
vis, vis, r., strength, power. (262.)

CHAPTER LV.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: RELATIVE OF PURPOSE.

[It is suggested that the turning of English into Latin be now deferred till after the Reading Lessons, pp. 211-222, have been finished.]

364. In all the Latin sentences in the preceding lesson in which ut and nē are used with the subjunctive, except 362, I, 9, the dependent clause expresses a purpose. And, on the other hand, in the English sentences all the dependent clauses expressing purpose (“to render aid,” “not to carry,” etc.) had to be turned into Latin by ut or nē with the subjunctive. But the Latin often expresses a purpose by means of a relative pronoun followed by the subjunctive. See the first six sentences below.

365. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ancus lēgātum mittit ut rēs repetat. 2. Ancus lēgātum mittit quī rēs repetat. 3. Lēgātū vēnērunt ut pācem

II. 1. A horse was given to the boy by his father, for him to ride. 2. A father sent a messenger to Rome to speak to his son. 3. A father sends a messenger to Rome to speak to his son. 4. Romulus makes proclamation that no one shall leap over his wall. 5. Romulus proclaimed that no one should leap over his wall. 6. We will warn them not to leap over our walls. 7. Romulus sent messengers to invite neighboring people to his games. 8. The father will give his son a horse for him to ride. 9. Who doubts that a kind father gives his son books? 10. Nobody doubted that the father had given his son many things.

366.

VOCABULARY.

al-loquor, 3. -locütus [ad], speak to, address.
Ancus, -i, m., Ancus, a Roman king.
asylum, -i, n., a place of refuge, asylum.
Catō, -onis, m., Cato, a famous Roman censor.
dī-ruō, 3. -ruī, -rutum, tear asunder, destroy.
equitō, 1 [eques], act the eques, ride.

finitimus, -a, -um, adj. [finis], bordering on, neighboring.
imperō, 1, order, command, with dative. Cf. jubeō with acc.
lūdus, -i, m. [lūdō], game, play.
nūntius, -i, m., bearer of news, messenger.
repetō, 3. -ivī, -īi, -ītum, seek again, demand back; rēs repetere, demand restitution.
trān-siliō, 4. -iī, and -iī, — [saliō, leap], leap over or across.

1 That he might ride.
2 Translate in two ways.
3 See 362. I. 6, and note.
4 Present subjunctive.
6 Many things, multa.
CHAPTER LVI.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: Ut and Nē.

367. The subjunctive with ut to denote purpose has been illustrated (352). But the subjunctive with ut has other uses.

368. Examine the following: —

1. Tantus est militum arдор ut ad bellum ducantur, so great is the ardor of the soldiers that they are led to war.
2. Accidit ut non domi essem, it happened that I was not at home.
3. Fabricius adeo inops decessit ut nihil reliquerit, Fabricius died so poor as to leave nothing.

In these examples the dependent clause denotes a result. Compare the translation of ut and the subjunctive in purpose clauses and in result clauses. That not in result clauses = ut non. Cf. 358.

369. Still another use of the subjunctive with ut and nē is illustrated in the following sentences: —

1. Timeō ut veniat, I fear that he is not coming, or will not come.
2. Timeō ut vēnerit, I fear that he has not come.
3. Timēbam ut vēnisset, I feared that he had not come.
4. Timeō nē veniat, I fear that he is coming, or will come
5. Timeō nē vēnerit, I fear that he has come.
6. Timēbam nē vēnisset, I feared that he had come.

An inspection of the foregoing examples shows that ut and nē seem sometimes to exchange meanings.

After verbs of fearing, ut is translated that not, and nē, that.

Observe that in 1 and 4 the present subjunctive may be translated as a future.

370. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Pompējus ītā ēgit ut ā Sūllā dīligērētur. — 2. Is, ut Sūlācē subvēnēret, mīlitēs collēgit. 3. Postēa īn Siciliam profectus est, ut eam prōvīnciam ā Carbōne recipēret.

1 An exception to 348. 2 See 343. 3 See 333. 1.
4. Catilinae exercitus adeò àcriter dīmīcāvit, ut nēmō super-
essa. 5. Accidit ut esset plēna lūna. 6. Atticus sic
Graecē loquēbātur, ut Athēnīs nātus vidērētūr. 7. Atticus
Athēnīs ita vīxit, ut omnibus cīvibus esset cārissimus.
10. Timeō ut sustineās labōrēs. 11. Metuō nē malum
13. Quid metuit nē malum cōnslīgium cāpiam?

Point out the purpose clauses in the above.

II. 1. The boy so acts that he is loved by all. 2. They
so acted that they were loved by all. 3. He will so act as to
be¹ loved by all. 4. He has so acted as to be loved by
all. 5. They will not doubt our having come.² 6. They
had not doubted our having come.³ 7. I fear that you are
not well. 8. I feared that you were not well. 9. I fear
that you are sick. 10. I was afraid that you had been sick.
11. The enemy are fighting so spiritedly that no one will
survive.⁴ 12. They have fought so sharply that not one has
survived. 13. We will set out for⁵ Sicily in order to receive⁶
that province.

371. VOCABULARY.
ac-cīdō, 3,-cīdi, — [ad, cādō],
fall upon, fall out, happen. Cf.
evenīō and incidō.
ad-eō, adv. (to this), thus far, so,
so very.
Atticus,-ī, m., Atticus, a friend of
Cicero.
Carbō,-ōnis, m., Carbo, a Roman.
Catilina,-ae, m., Catiline, a fa-
mous Roman conspirator.
collīgō, 3,-lēgī, -lēctum [com,
legō], collect. Also conligō.
di-micō, 1, fight, contend.
Graecē, adv. [Graecus], in Greek.
loquor, 3, locūtus, speak, talk.
sub-veniō, 4, -vēni, -ventum, come to the aid of; aid, assist,
with dative. Cf. succurrō.
sustineō, 2,-tinui,-tentum [sub,
teneō], hold up, bear, endure.

¹ As to be, ut, etc.
² That we have come.
³ That we had come.
⁴ Pres. subj.
⁵ See I. 3, and note.
⁶ Not infinitive.
CHAPTER LVII. 1.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: *Cum.*

372. The subjunctive occurs very frequently in dependent clauses beginning with *cum,* meaning (1) *when,* *while,* *as,* of time; (2) *since,* *because,* *as,* of cause or reason; (3) *although,* of concession:

1. *Cum Servius in domō Tarquinī esset, mīrāble accidit,*
   *while Servius was in the house of Tarquin, a wonderful thing happened.*

2. *Cum Tarquinius occīsus esset, ējus uxor populum alloccūta est,* *when Tarquin had been killed, his wife addressed the people.*

3. *Tullia, cum domum redīret, super corpus patris carpentum ēgit,* *Tullia, as she was returning home, drove her wagon over the body of her father.*

An inspection of the above examples shows that—
(1) The tenses of the subjunctive are the imperf. and pluperfect.
(2) The *cum* clause marks the time of the act of the principal clause, the verb of which is in the perfect.
(3) The sentences may be called narrative sentences.

373. Rule of Syntax.— *Cum* temporal, that is, *cum* in narrative clauses, is followed by the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to mark the time of the action in the principal clause.

374. Examine the following:—

1. *Cum huic lēgī senātus repūgnāret, Caesar rem ad populum dētulit,* *since the senate opposed this law, Caesar referred the matter to the people.*

2. *Cum dē imprōvisō vēnisset, Rēmī lēgātōs mīsērunt,* *since he had come unexpectedly, the Remi sent ambassadors.*

3. *Cum vītā metūs plēna sit, amīcītās parāte,* *since life is full of fear, form friendships.*

4. *Cum mē interrogāveris, respondēbō,* *as you have asked me,*
   *I will answer.*
5. Nihil mé adjüvit cum posset, he gave me no aid (aided me in nothing), although it was in his power.

Notice that—
(1) All the four tenses of the subjunctive are used.
(2) The cum clause states the cause or reason of the act of the principal clause; or denotes a concession, indicated in English by though, admitting that, etc.

375. Rule of Syntax.—Cum causal or concessive is followed by the subjunctive in all its tenses.

1. Cum followed by the present or perfect subjunctive is almost always causal, and may be translated since or as; followed by the imperfect or pluperfect it is very often temporal.

2. Cum temporal and the subjunctive can often be translated in some other way better than by when or as with the indicative. Thus, in 372.2, we might translate, After the killing of Tarquin, etc.; and in 3, Tullia, returning home, or Tullia, on her way home.

376. Exercises.
I. 1. Cum jüssi essent invicem dīcere, ūnus orsus est.
2. Pyrrhus, cum tot Rōmānōs mortātōs vidēret, manūs ad caecum sustulit.
3. Cum explōrātōrēs ĉēpisset, ēōs per castrā circumdūxīt.
4. Quae cum ita sint,1 perge.
5. Cum sit in nōbis cōnsiliō, ĉur dubitāmus?
6. Cum dē imprōvisī vēnerit Caesar, ad eum lēgātōs mittēmus.
7. Cum amīci adsint, gaudēmus.
8. Cum2 nox appropinquāret, abiērunt.
9. Cum nox appropinquāvisset, abiērant.
10. Caesar, cum frūstrā mīsisset, sōlus nāvicularum cōnsendit nē āgnōscerētur.

II. 1. When one had begun,3 the rest became (were) silent.
2. Pyrrhus, having seen4 the bravery of the Romans, spoke these words. 3. Since he has seen the bravery of the Romans, he raises his hands to heaven. 4. Since night is

---

1 Since these things are so = such being the case.
2 Cum may be translated as temporal or causal: on the approach of night; or, since night was approaching.
3 See 373.
4 Pyrrhus, when he had seen.
approaching, we will go off. 5. When our friends had arrived, we went to Boston. 6. On the arrival of our friends we went to Boston. 7. While Cæsar was embarking in a boat, no one recognized him. 8. As Cæsar was alone, he was not recognized. 9. As I was telling him a story, he suddenly laughed. 10. As they had prudence, we did not hesitate.

377. VOCABULARY.
āgnōscō, 3, gnōvī, gnitum, [ad, (g)nōscō, know], recognize.
ap-prōpinquō, 1 [ad], approach.
Bostonia, -ae, r., Boston.
cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., the rest.
circum-ducō, 3, -ō, -ductum, lead around.
cōn-secundō, 3, -dī, -scēnsum [scandō, climb], ascend, embark, go on board.
dubitō, 1 [dubīus], doubt, hesitate. dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful.
Gaudeō, 2, gāvisus sum, be glad, rejoice.
im-prō-visō, adv. [videō], unexpectedly
in-vicem, adv., by turns, in turn.
jubeō, 2, jussī, jussum, bid, order. Cf. imperō.
mortuus, -a, -um [P. of morior], dead.
nāvica, -ae, r. [nāvis], little vessel, boat.
ordior, 4, orsus, begin, undertake.
pergō, 3, perrēxi, perrēctum [per, regō], go on, continue.
taceō, 2, tacuí, tacitum, be silent, say nothing about.
tollō, 3, sustulī, sublātum, raise, lift up.
tot, adj., indecl., so many. Cf. quot.

2.

378. FOR TRANSLATION.
The Battle of Cannæ.—Continue

Aemilius Paullus tēlis obrutus cecidit. Quem cum mediš in pūgnā sedentem in saxō opplētum cruōre cōnspexisset quī-

1 The as of reason, or of time?
2 Four common verbs, audēō, dare, gaudeō, rejoice, soleō, be accustomed, fidō, trust, have the passive form in the perfect, and hence are called semi-deponents.
3 Translate first mentally, taking the words as they stand, rendering cum, when; then recast this preliminary translation, beginning with cum quidam tribū-nus, and rendering quem, him.

Follow this method, when a Latin sentence appears difficult; but keep a sharp eye on the terminations of the words.

- - - - -

CHAPTER LVIII.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

379. Examine the following: —

**DIRECT.**

1. *Quis est?* who is he?

2. *Ubi sumus?* where are we?

3. *Cūr rīdeś?* why do you laugh?

4. *Quem vīdistī?* whom have you seen?

**INDIRECT.**

1. Scio quis sit, *I know who he is.*

2. Scio ubi sumus, *I know where we are.*


4. Scio quem vīderis, *I know whom you have seen.*

---

1 See 340. 5.
2 Supply dīxit or respondit. But it is livelier without a verb.
3 Perhaps the literal translation of this phrase is, *be thou blessed in (or for) thy courage; maecte for maectus,* because tū is here almost more of a vocative than a nominative.
4 Supply nē after cavē, *beware lest you lose = beware of losing.*
5 Connects mūniant and firment.
6 Imperative from patior.
7 Account for the case.
8 From occidō. But occīsī, in the next clause, from occidō.
9 For; in expresses purpose.
THE SUBJUNCTIVE: INDIRECT QUESTIONS. 179

Compare each of the foregoing examples in the left hand column with the corresponding one on the right. Observe that each dependent clause in the right hand column begins with an interrogative word, and contains the substance of a question, though not a question in form. Such dependent clauses are called Indirect Questions. Observe the mood, and how it is translated.

380. Rule of Syntax.—Indirect questions take the subjunctive.

1. The commonest interrogative words introducing indirect questions are quis, who? cūr, why? nūm, whether? ubi, where? quō, whither? unde, whence? quot, how many?

381. Exercises.
[Read again the remarks and rule, p. 165.]


III. 1. He sees who is walking; has walked. 2. They see who are walking; have walked. 3. We shall see who walk; have walked. 4. We knew why he was laughing; had laughed. 5. You knew why I was laughing; had laughed.

1 See p. 150, note. 2 See 279. 3. 3 Compare 365. I. 2 and 4. 4 Into what parts = in what direction.
6. They wondered why he was praised; had been praised.
7. They will wonder why I am praised; have been praised.
8. Do you not wonder why we are praised; have been praised? 9. I wonder whether he has been admonished; is being admonished. 10. They wondered whether we were admonished; had been admonished.

**382.**

**VOCABULARY.**

interrogō, 1, ask, inquire.  
rogō, 1, ask, question.

Nāsica, -ae, m., Nasica, surname of one of the Scipios.  
sciō, 4, scivi, scītum, know.

num,1 interrog. adv., whether, introducing indirect questions.  
solēō,2 2, solitus, be accustomed.

speculator, 1, spy out, watch.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., safe.

**interrogō**, ask a question, inquire, and nearly limited to that sense.  
**rogō**, ask a question, but much more commonly ask a favor, make a request.

**quaeōrō**, ask a question, but much used in the sense of seeking to gain or to know, searching into.

---

**CHAPTER LIX. 1.**

**THE SUBJUNCTIVE: WISHES AND CONDITIONS.**

**383.** Examine the following:—

1. Utinam pater veniat! would that father would come! I wish father would come! O that father would come!

2. Sī pater veniat, laetus sim, if father should come, I should be glad.

3. Utinam pater adesset! would that father were here!

4. Sī pater adesset, laetus essem, if father were here, I should be glad.

5. Utinam pater adfuisset! would that father had been here!

6. Sī pater adfuisset, laetus fuisset, if father had been here, I should have been glad.

---

1 Introducing direct questions, it indicates that the answer no is expected, but does not usually admit of translation.  
2 See p. 177, n. 2.
(1) In 1 and 2 what time do the words *would come, should come, should be*, point to? Plainly not to the past, nor to the instant present, but vaguely to the future; and this vague future is expressed in Latin by the present subjunctive. The wish and the condition referring to the future *may be fulfilled*; the father *may come*.

(2) In 3 and 4 the wish and condition refer to the present; and this present is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive. The wish and condition are plainly *contrary to what is the fact*; the father *is*, in fact, *not present*.

(3) In 5 and 6 the tense of the subjunctive offers no difficulty. The wish and condition are plainly *contrary to what was the fact*; the father *was*, in fact, *not present*.

384. Rule of Syntax.—In wishes and conditions the present subjunctive is used of what *may come true*, the imperfect subjunctive of what is *not true*, the pluperfect subjunctive of what *was not true*. The same mood is regularly employed in the conclusion of such conditional sentences.

The indicative is not used in wishes. The use of the indicative in conditional sentences is easily understood.

385. Examine the following:—

1. *Si pater adest, bene est, if father is present, it is well.*
2. *Si pater aderat, bene erat, if father was present, it was well.*
3. *Si pater aderit, bene erit, if father shall be present,* it will be well.

Observe that in examples 1 and 2 a condition is stated without implying anything. In example 3, as the time is future, that which is supposed *may be fulfilled*. This form, then, of stating a supposition is almost exactly equivalent to that of the present subjunctive in 383; it is only a livelier way of putting it.

---

1 In English we commonly use a present form in such conditions that refer to the future. Thus we say, *If he is (to-morrow, next week, etc.) present, it will be well.* Do not be deceived, when translating into Latin, by this apparent present. See if the conclusion contains a future.
386. EXERCISES.¹

I. 1. Sī victoriam certānum videam, nunquam pūgnem.  
2. Sī mē virum bonum judicāreś, non mē corrumpere vellēs.² 
3. Dictātor,³ sī adfuisset, rem non mélius gessisset. 
4. Varrō, sī Carthaginiēnsium dux fuisset, temeritātis poenās dedisset.⁴ 
7. Sī rectē faciās, laudēris. 8. Sī maneat Mārcus, gaudēmus; sīn autem cat, tamen cum laudēmus. 
9. Sī leō accēderet,⁵ omnēs fugerent. 10. Utinam frāter meus vīveret 
   clāssemque iterum dūceret! 11. Utinam māter nōbis fābulam nārret! 12. Utinam tēcum⁶ in agrīs ambulāvissem!

II.⁷ 1. Would that I were walking in the fields with you to-day! 2. I wish you had been walking⁸ with me⁹ yesterday. 3. O take⁹ a walk with us in the fields to-morrow! 4. If you should see victory certain, my friend, should you not fight? 5. I should not now be setting out if Ĉæsar did not order it. 6. If you were acting rightly, you would be praised. 7. If you had acted rightly, you would have been praised. 8. I wish⁹ you would act rightly, so as to¹⁰ be praised. 9. If we should see a lion, we should flee.

¹ In translating these sentences, render the present subjunctive in such a way as to indicate vaguely future time; thus, videam... pūgnem, should see... should fight.
² Compare 383. 4, and read again 383 (2).
³ Notice the position of this word, which is the subject of gessisset. It may be translated as it stands, first.
⁴ Given punishments of = paid the penalty for.
⁵ If a lion were coming, not were to come, which would be expressed by the present subjunctive.
⁶ See 265. 3.
⁷ In turning these sentences into Latin, do not be misled as to the real time of the verbs; were walking, in the first sentence, denotes present time. Read again the examples, 383, and the remarks. See also the varied translation of the first example.
⁸ Compare I. 12.
⁹ Compare 383. 1.
¹⁰ Ut. See 352.
10. I wish I had seen a huge lion. 11. If my brother were living, he would now be commanding the fleet. 12. Would that your brother were alive!

### Vocabulary

- **ac-cēdō**, 3, -cēssi, -cēssum [ad], go or come near, approach.
- **cor-rumpō**, 3, -rūpi, -ruptum [com], break in pieces, destroy; corrupt, bribe.
- **dictātor**, ōris, m. [dictō, dicō], chief magistrate, dictator.
- **immānis**, -e, adj., huge, immense.
- **jūdicō**, 1 [jūdex], judge, deem.
- **rectē**, adv. [rectus], rightly.
- **sin**, conj. [si, uē], but if, if however, if.
- **temeritās**, -ātis, f. [temerē], chance; rashness.
- **uti-nam**, adv., would that, O that, I wish that.

### Colloquium

**Johannes et Jacobus.**

**Jo.** Dic mihi, Jacob, unde veniās, quid ēgeris. [have been doing]

**Ja.** Rūre veniō, ubi ēriārum partem ēgī. Et tū?

**Jo.** Ego iter cum parentibus fēcī, neque scio quandō domum revertar. [return]

**Ja.** Utinam ego quoque iter faciam! Si parentēs adessent, iter mēcum facerent.

**Jo.** Ego itineris diūturnitāte sum dēfessus, et gaudērem si in scholā essem.

**Ja.** Veni mēcum in scholam et unā ēdiscāmus. [together let us learn]

**Jo.** Tēcum libenter in scholam ibō, sed cōgnōscere velim qui sit praecceptor.

**Ja.** Praecceptor est vir doctissimus. Vim Latīnī scīt, atque semper est benīgnus, mōrōsus nunquam.

**Jo.** Quid tē docet?

---

1 Imitate the order in 1. 3 and 4; the subject might, however, be placed after si.

Jo. Multa dē interrogātiōnibus indīrectīs audīvi, neque unquam intellegere potuī. Fēcitque praeceptor ut tū īsta intellegerēs?


---

CHAPTER LX.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE.

389. Learn the future imperative, active and passive, of the regular and irregular verbs, and review the present imperative.

390. In the last lesson occurred the first illustrations of the subjunctive not in dependent clauses, that is, in wishes and in the principal clauses of conditional sentences. The subjunctive is similarly used in commands and appeals, and when so used is called the Hortatory Subjunctive.

391. Examine the following paradigms: —

Commands and Appeals.

Positive.

moneam, let me advise.

moneāmus, let us advise.

nē moneam, let me not advise.

moneāmus, let us not advise.

Monē, or monēās, advise.

moneāt, he shall advise.

nē moneāt, he shall not advise.

Monē, or monēās, advise.

moneant, let them advise.

nē moneant, let them not advise.

Monērit, he shall advise.

nē monērit, he shall not advise.

Monē, or monēās, advise.

moneant, let them advise.

nē moneant, let them not advise.

nē monērit, he shall not advise.

nē monērit, he shall not advise.
THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE. 185

(1) Observe that positive commands and appeals are expressed by the subjunctive only, except in the second person; and negative commands and appeals, by the subjunctive with nē.¹

(2) Observe also that the present and perfect subjunctive, in the third person, are used without essential difference of meaning; and that in negative commands and appeals in the second person the perfect² only³ is given.

(3) The future imperative is mostly confined to laws and maxims: Hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepelītō, thou shalt not bury a dead man within the city. Percontātōrem fugitō, nam garrulus idem est, avoid a questioner, for he is a babbler too.

(4) The preceding paradigms, with the meanings, should be thoroughly committed to memory.

392. EXERCISES.


II. 1. They shall not send⁸ a messenger. 2. Let no one touch⁹ the fourth part. 3. Touch not¹⁰ the fourth part of the

¹ Prohibitions are more commonly expressed by nōli (nōlite) with the infinitive. See 318. I. 5 and 6.
² This form of the subjunctive in this use is here called the perfect, in deference to custom: it is really the subjunctive of the future perfect.
³ The imperative so used is not common, and not to be imitated.
⁴ Compare 365. I. 2 and 4.
⁵ Omnia sua, their all.
⁶ See 265. 3.
⁷ Let no one. See 279. 6.
⁸ Nē with perfect subjunctive.
⁹ See I. 12.
¹⁰ Express in two ways.
booty. 4. Let the pupils listen attentively to the words of the master. 5. Do not listen, boys, to the counsels of the bad. 6. Write daily to your parents what you are doing. 7. Carry your books home with you and study diligently. 8. Do not forget what has been said to you to-day. 9. Touch not wine; let us not touch wine; they shall not touch wine. 10. Let us go out and carry our all with us.

393. VOCABULARY.

at, conj., but. Cf. autem. (211.)
andeo, 2. ausus sum, dare, be bold.
cōn-ficō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [com,
facēr], make, accomplish, carry out.
cotidiē, adv. [quot, diēs], daily.

falsus, -a, -um, adj. [fallō, de-
ceive], deceptive, false.
incantus, -a, -um, adj. [caveō],
incantious, heedless.
re-stō, 1, restitū, ——, stay behind,
remain.
tangō, 3, tētīgī, taetūm, touch.

at, but on the contrary, but for all that.
sed, but, without special emphasis.
autem, but, often to be rendered however; weaker than at or sed.

394. FOR TRANSLATION.

Mārcus Porcius Catō, Puer.

M. Porcius Catō jam puer6 invictum animi rōbur ostendit. Cum in domō Drūsī avunculi suī ēducārētur, Latinī dē civi-
tāte impetrānda7 Rōman vēnērānt. Popēdius, Latinōrum princeps, quī Drūsī hospes erat, Catōnem paucum rogāvit, ut Latinōs apud avunculum adjuvāret. Catō vultū constantī

---

1 Express in two ways.
2 Compare I. 10.
3 See 336.
4 Id quod.
5 See p. 177, note 2.
6 Jam puer, already a boy = even in boyhood.
7 Dē civitāte impetrānda, respecting the citizenship to be ob-
tained = to obtain citizenship.
THE INFINITIVE.

negavit id sé factūrum.\(^1\) Iterum deinde ac saepius interpellatus\(^2\) in prōpositō perstītit. Tunc Popēdius puerum in excellsam aedium partem levātum tenuit,\(^3\) et sé abjectūrum\(^4\) inde minātus est, nisi precibus obtemperāret; neque hoc metū\(^5\) a sententiā eum potuit dīmovēre. Tunc Popēdius exclāmāsse\(^6\) fertur: \(^7\) "Grātulēmur\(^8\) nōbis," Latīnī, hunc esse tam parvum; sī enim senātor esset,\(^10\) nē spērāre quidem\(^11\) jūs\(^12\) civitātis licēret.\(^10\)

---

CHAPTER LXI.

THE INFINITIVE.

395. Learn the infinitives of the regular and irregular verbs. (86, 112, 180, 223, 235, etc.)

396. Examine the following:

1. Errāre est hūmānum, to err is human.
2. Possum vidēre, I am able to see.
3. Volō legere, I wish to read.
4. Ἐμα sequī sé jubet, he orders her to follow him(self).
5. Sāturnus in Itāliam vēnisse dīcitur, Saturn is said to have come into Italy.

Observe that in each sentence the infinitive is used in Latin precisely as in English. This use of the infinitive, as offering no difficulty, has been tacitly illustrated in some of the foregoing exercises.

\(^1\) Negāvit . . . factūrum, denied himself to be going to do it = refused to do it.
\(^2\) Perf. part. See amātus, p. 34.
\(^3\) Puerum . . . levātum tenuit, held the raised-up boy = raised up and held the boy.
\(^4\) Sē abjectūrum, that he would throw (him) down.
\(^5\) Hōc metū, by this fear = by fear of this.
\(^6\) Exclāmāsse = exclāmāvisse.
\(^7\) Fertur = dīcitur.
\(^8\) Grātulēmur, let us congratulate. See 391.
\(^9\) Nōbis. See 343.
\(^10\) Esset . . . licēret. See 383.
\(^11\) Nē . . . quidem, not even.
\(^12\) Jūs civitātis. Cf. civitāte, line 2.
EXERCISES.


II. 1. Pyrrhus wanted to bribe Fabricius.  2. Fabricius could not be turned from (the path of) honor.  3. Why did you begin to weep?  4. Did Hannibal know how to conquer?  5. Tarquin was said to have besieged Rome.  6. Rome is said to have been besieged.  7. Seeing is believing.  8. The consul was ordered to tear down the bridge.  9. The bridge is said to have been torn down.  10. It is pleasant to live for (one’s) friends.  11. We intend to tear down the bridge.  12. He is said to have departed from Italy.

VOCABULARY.

ā-vertō, 3, -tī, -sūm, turn away from, avert.
creō, 3, -dī, -ditum, trust, believe, w. dat. (343.)
decet, 2, decuit, —, impers. (p. 200), it is becoming, fitting, proper.
honestās, -ātis, r. [honestus], honor, integrity, honesty.
in-ciπō, 3, -cēπī, -cēptum [ca-piō] (take in hand), begin.
maturō, 1 [mātūris, rīpe], hasten.
morior, 3, mortuus, die.
pōns, pontis, m., bridge.
re-scīndo, 3, -scīdī, -scissum, tear away, tear down, break down.
soror, -ōris, r., sister.

1 You know how.
2 See 304.
3 It is in mind to us = we intend.
4 Could not = was not able.
5 See I. 4.
6 To see is to believe. Cf. I. 7.
7 Use jubeō.
9 Morior has future participle moriturōs.
CHAPTER LXII. 1.

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

399. Examine the following:—

DIRECT.

1. Homo est, he is a man.
2. Ignis calet, fire is hot.
3. Amicus adest, (his) friend is present.
4. Mundus a Deo regitur, the world is ruled by God.

INDIRECT.

1. Dicit se hominem esse, he says that he is a man.
2. Sentimus ignem calere, we perceive that fire is hot.
3. Putat amicum adeste, he thinks that his friend is present.
4. Scimus mundum a Deo regi, we know that the world is ruled by God.

Notice the difference between the direct and indirect forms of statement.

In the second group, compare the English with the Latin. Observe (1) that after the leading verb there is nothing in the Latin corresponding to the conjunction that; (2) that, while the English retains the nominative and indicative of the direct form, the Latin has instead the accusative and infinitive.

The second group illustrates the indirect discourse, so called because what some one says, thinks, or knows, is stated in the dependent clause indirectly.

400. Rule of Syntax.—The accusative and infinitive are regularly used after verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like.

401. Rule of Syntax.—The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.
ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

402. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

\[
\begin{align*}
dicit & \quad \textit{tē scribere,} & \text{he says that you are writing.} \\
dicet & \quad \textit{tē scribere,} & \text{he will say that you are writing.} \\
dīxit & \quad \text{he said that you were writing.} \\
dicit & \quad \textit{epistulam scribī,} & \text{he says that the letter is being written.} \\
dicet & \quad \textit{epistulam scribī,} & \text{he will say that the letter is being written.} \\
dīxit & \quad \text{he said that the letter was being written.}
\end{align*}
\]

FUTURE.

\[
\begin{align*}
dicit & \quad \textit{tē scriptūrum esse,} & \text{he says that you will write.} \\
dicet & \quad \textit{tē scriptūrum esse,} & \text{he will say that you will write.} \\
dīxit & \quad \text{he said that you would write.} \\
dicit & \quad \textit{epistulam scriptūm ēri,} & \text{he says that the letter will be written.} \\
dicet & \quad \textit{epistulam scriptūm ēri,} & \text{he will say that the letter will be written.} \\
dīxit & \quad \text{he said that the letter would be written.}
\end{align*}
\]

PERFECT.

\[
\begin{align*}
dicit & \quad \textit{tē scrisisse,} & \text{he says that you wrote (have written).} \\
dicet & \quad \textit{tē scrisisse,} & \text{he will say that you wrote (have written).} \\
dīxit & \quad \text{he said that you wrote (had written).} \\
dicit & \quad \textit{epistulam scriptām} & \text{he says that the letter was (has been) written.} \\
dicet & \quad \textit{scriptām} & \text{he will say that the letter was (has been) written.} \\
dīxit & \quad \text{esse,} & \text{he said that the letter was (had been) written.}
\end{align*}
\]

A study of the above table will show that the present infinitive denotes the same time as that indicated by the tense of the leading verb; that the future infinitive denotes time after that indicated by the leading verb; and that the perfect infinitive denotes time before that indicated by the leading verb.

403. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The tenses of the infinitive refer to present, future, or past time, relatively to the time of the leading verb.

\[\text{1 More commonly, } \text{fore ut epistula } \text{with subj. Also see p. 192, n. 1.}\]
2.

**EXERCISES.**

[It will be best to translate each of the following sentences twice; first, literally, just as they stand, then into good English: thus, *History relates two sons to have been to Cornelia = history relates that Cornelia had two sons.* The eighth thus: *The ambassador said himself a public messenger to be of the Roman people = the ambassador said that he was, etc.*]


[Before translating into Latin, cast each sentence mentally into the Latin form; thus the first sentence will be, *It is said two sons to have been to Cornelia, or Cornelia two sons to have had;* and the seventh, *We know you the truth to be about to tell.* This practice is of capital importance.]

II. 1. It is said that Cornelia had two sons. 2. Have we not heard that Cornelia had jewels? 3. I think that you will have jewels. 4. We know that Cornelia loved her boys. 5. Do not all mothers think that their sons are their jewels? 6. I think that the moon will be full to-morrow. 7. We know that you will tell the truth. 8. History relates that Hannibal was defeated by Marcellus. 9. It is related that Homer wrote poems. 10. I know that this has been done. 11. He said that the enemy held the mountain.

---

1 In the compound tenses of the passive voice the perfect participle occasionally loses its idea of time and becomes virtually an adjective. Here *trāditum est* = *it is (a thing) related.*

2 Subject of *fierī.*

3 Nōnne.
3.

405.

EXERCISES.

[Read the first paragraph, page 191.]


[See second paragraph, p. 191. The first sentence expressed in the Latin idiom will be, Ennius says himself at home not to be; the third, He thinks himself at home to be about to be; the fourth, Cato thought his friends the truth not always to speak (compare I. 8.).]

II. 1. Ennius says that he is not at home. 2. He said that he had not been at home. 3. He thinks that he shall be at home to-morrow. 4. Cato thought that his friends did not always tell him\(^5\) the truth. 5. It is evident that the world was not made by chance. 6. We have sworn that we will not desert our leader. 7. The soldiers swore that they had not deserted the republic. 8. It was evident that the enemy was being defeated.\(^6\) 9. Do you not know that the enemy are near? 10. It is certain that they are advancing towards the town.

\(^1\) Captum, being a supine (433), does not change its form to agree with Rōmam.

\(^2\) Ferunt = dīcunt.

\(^3\) Observe the difference between illum in 6 and sē in 7.

\(^4\) To have thirty years = to be thirty years old.

\(^5\) Him = himself; not accusative.

\(^6\) Notice that the time of the dependent verb is present, with reference to that of the leading verb.
406. VOCABULARY.

acerbus, -a, -um, adj. [āer], harsh, bitter.

arbitror, 1, think, suppose, believe.

con-stat, 1, -stitit, ——, impers. (415), it is evident, clear.

dē-serō, 3, -uí, -tum, desert, abandon.

Ennius, -i, m., Ennius, a Roman poet.

ex-clāmō, 1, cry out, exclaim.

Gallus, -i, m., a Gaul.

historia, -ae, f., history.

in-imicus, -a, -um, adj. [amicus], unfriendly, hostile; noun, an enemy. (172.)

intus, adv. [in], inside, within.

jūrō, 1 [jūs], swear, take an oath.

Mārcellus, -i, m., Marcellus, a Roman general.

mātrōna, -ae, f. [māter], wife, lady, matron.

nūntiō, 1 [nūntius], announce, report.

ōrnāmentum, -i, n. [ōrnō], ornament, jewel. (345. 9.)

populus, -i, m., people.

publicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus] (pertaining to the people), public. (345. 19.)

quondam, adv., once, formerly.

sentīō, 4, sēnsī, sēnsum, feel, know (by the senses), see, perceive.

tantum, adv. [tantis], only.

Thalēs, -is, m., Thales, a Greek philosopher.

trā-dō, 3, -didi, -ditum [trāns], give over, deliver; relate, recount.

vērum, -i, n. [vērus], the truth.

407. FOR TRANSLATION.

Nāṣica et Ennius.

Nāṣica,1 cum ad poētam Ennium vēnisset,2 eīque3 ab ōstiō quaerenti4 Ennium ancilla dīxisset eum domī5 nōn esse, sēnsīt illam6 dominī jūsū dīxisse, et illum7 intus esse. Punctīs post dīcēbus, cum ad Nāsicam vēnisset Ennius et eum ā8 jānuā quaereret, exclamāt Nāṣica sē domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius, "Quid? ego nōn cōgnōscō vōcem," inquit,9 "tuam?"

1 Subject of sēnsīt.
2 Ad ... vēnisset, had come to, that is, to call on.
3 To him, dat. of is. See 270. 2.
4 Pres. part. of quaerō, in the dat. with ei, to him asking for.
5 See 336.
6 Refers to ancilla, and is the subject acc. of dīxisse.
7 That is, Ennius.
8 Ā jānuā, at the door.
9 Observe the position of inquit.
PARTICIPLES.

Hic Násica: "Homo es impudëns. Ego, cum té quaerere-
rem, ancillae tuae crēdidi té domī nōn esse; tū mihi nōn
crēdis ipsī?"

CHAPTER LXIII. 1.

PARTICIPLES.

408. Learn the participles of the regular and irregular verbs.

1. For declension of a present active participle, see 165. The
ablative singular generally ends in e, but in i when the participle
is used as an adjective.

2. The other participles, ending in us, a, um, are declined like
bonus (71).

409. Examine the following: —

1. Fortissimē dīmicāns, cadet, he falls, he will fall;
   cadit, he falls;
   fighting most
   bravely.

2. Hostēs adortus prōfligāvit, he attacked and routed (having
   attacked, he routed) the enemy.

3. Êl advenientī aquila pilleum sustulit, an eagle took off his
cap as he was approaching (to him approaching).

4. Leōnidās superātus cēdere nōluit, Leonidas, (though)
over-
powered, would not yield.

5. Rōmā expulsus Athēnās ēbit, (if) expelled from Rome, he
will go to Athens.

6. Epistulam sibi commissam dētulit, he delivered the letter
(which had been) intrusted to him.

7. Ėā rē comōtus in Italiam reēt, he returned into Italy
(because he was) alarmed at this event.

8. Nōs moritūrī salūtāmus, we, (who are) about to die, salute you.

9. Ob virgīnēs raptās, on account of the seizure of the maidens
(maidens seized).

1 An adverb, hereupon.
2 Dat. after crēdidi. See 343.
3 Subject acc. of esse. See 401
4 Emphasizes mihi. (270. 4.)
PARTICIPLES.

Study the above examples with reference first to the tenses of the participles, and observe that the time of the participles is present, past, or future, relatively to the time of the leading verb.

Notice how the participle is translated in each example; only in the first is it ever translated literally. What the Latin expresses by a participle we very often express by a clause beginning as, though, if, because, etc., by a relative clause, or by a verb coördinate with one following.

2.

EXERCISES.

[It will be best to translate every sentence literally, then into good English.]


[Cast each of the following sentences into the Latin idiom before attempting to translate. Thus, Romulus killed Remus laughing at (acc. in agreement with Remus); Horatius stabbed his sister forgetful (oblītam); to the ambassadors demanding, etc.]

II. 1. Romulus killed Remus because he laughed at his wall. 2. Horatius stabbed his sister with his sword because

---

1 Feminine of the perf. part. oblītus, from oblīviscor. Translate, Thou who hast forgotten (lit., having forgotten).
2 To the ambassador demanding = to the ambassador who demanded, or when the ambassador demanded.
3 Respōnsum est, it was replied = answer was made.
4 Excussum trānsfixit, struck off and stabbed. See 409. 2.
5 About to avenge, i.e., in order to avenge.
6 Compare 409. 6.
she was forgetful of her country. 3. The Latins answered the ambassadors haughtily, when they demanded restitution. 4. The Gauls entered the open houses. 5. To the Romans, as they came out of the pass, the light was sadder than death itself. 6. The old men went forth to meet Manlius as he was returning to Rome. 7. They bound the prisoner and brought him back to the city. 8. The letter which had been written by the boy was delivered. 9. The Romans never despaired, though they were often defeated. 10. Caesar received the senate sitting, when they came to him.

411. VOCABULARY.

com-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, shake, disturb, excite, alarm.
dē-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, (bring down), deliver.
dē-spērō, 1, be hopeless, despair.
ed-vertō, 3, -ti, -sum, overturn, overthrow, destroy.
executō, 3, -cussī, -cussūm [quatiō], shake out, strike off, drive away, cast out.
Falisci, -ōrum, m., the Faliscans, a people of Etruria.
hinc, adv. [hic], from this place, hence.
ir-rīdeō, 2, -rīsī, -rīsūm [in], laugh at, ridicule, jest, mock.
Latīnus, -a, -um [Latium], Latin; noun, a Latin.

necessitās, ātis, f. [necesse], necessity, constraint.
ob-viam, adv., in the way; with verb of motion, meet; w. dat.
pateō, 2, -ui, ——, lie open, be open; part. patēnūs, open.
porta,-ae, r., gate, door. Cf. jānua.
re-dūcō, 3, -Xi, -ductum, lead back, bring back.
senior, -ōris, m. & f. (comp. of senex, old), elder, old' person.
statim, adv. (stō), (standing there), on the spot, immediately, at once.
superbē, adv. [superbus], proudly, haughtily.
trāns-fīgō, 3, -fixī, -fixūm, pierce through, pierce, stab.
vindicō, 1, claim, avenge, punish.

1 Dative.
2 See 211, 212.
3 To meet, obviam.
4 Compare l. 7.
5 Not the last word: the Romans often defeated, etc.
6 In agreement with Caesar.
7 Had come. See 373.
CHAPTER LXIV.

PARTICIPLES: ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

412. Examine the following:—

Sōle oriente, fugiunt, tenebrae,
{ the sun rising,
 { when the sun rises,
 { the shadows flee away.
 { at the rising of the sun,

Datō signō, virginēs, raptae sunt,
{ the signal having been given,
 { when the signal was given,
 { the maidens were seized.
 { at the given signal,

Eō reōnante, bellum exortum est,
{ he reigning,
 { in his reign,
 { a war arose.
 { while he was reigning,

Cōnsul, bellō cōnfectō, Rōmam rediit,
{ the war having been finished,
 { when the war was finished,
 { the consul returned to Rome.
 { having finished the war,

Tē dūce, hostēs vincēmus,
{ you (being) leader,
 { if you are our leader;
 { we shall conquer the enemy.
 { with you for a leader,

Messāllā et Pīsōne, cōnsulibus,
{ M. and P. (being) consuls.
 { when M. and P. were consuls.
 { in the consulship of M. and P.

Serēnō caelō,
{ the sky (being) clear.
 { when the sky is clear.
 { in a clear sky.

1. The foregoing examples illustrate the very common construction called the Ablative Absolute.

2. In the first four examples there is a noun (or pronoun) in the ablative, and a participle agreeing with it. In the last three there is no participle expressed, but instead, another noun or an adjective.

3. Carefully compare the Latin with the English translation, and observe that each ablative absolute may be rendered by a clause beginning with when, while, or if (in other instances because, although, etc.), the Latin noun in the ablative becoming the subject of the clause in English, and that this noun refers to a different person or thing from the subject of the leading verb.
4. We may also sometimes translate the participle in the ablative absolute by a verb coördinate with a following verb. Thus the fourth might be translated, The consul finished the war and returned.

5. If I wish to express in the Latin, While he was reigning, he carried on war, he being the subject of both the principal and subordinate clauses, I say, Is rēgnāns bellum gessit; but if I wish to express, While he was reigning, war arose, he being subject of the subordinate clause, and war of the principal, I use the ablative absolute, thus, Eō rēgnante, bellum exortum est.

6. In the fourth example notice the change of idiom. We might say, The consul, having finished the war, returned to Rome; but the Latin has no perfect active participle corresponding to having finished; therefore, in Latin the perfect passive participle must be used in the ablative with the noun bellum. The same idea may, of course, be expressed by a cum clause. See 372.

7. From the nature of deponent verbs (passive form with active meaning), it will be seen that the English participle with having may be directly expressed in Latin, if there is a deponent verb of the right meaning; thus, Cæsar having encouraged his men, Cæsar mīlitēs hortātus.

8. Most instances of the so-called ablative absolute may be resolved as the ablative of time, means, cause, etc.

413. EXERCISES.

[Translate each ablative absolute in as many ways as possible.]


1 When this had been done. What is it literally?
Before trying to translate the following sentences, consider well in each case what the probable Latin form of expression, or idiom, would be for the subordinate clause, adverbial phrase, etc.; thus, When he had stabbed the girl = the girl (having been) stabbed; When Numa was king = Numa (being) king; By hurling their javelins = by the javelins hurled.

1. When he had stabbed the girl, he put by his sword.
2. On the expulsion of King Tarquin, Brutus and Collatinus were made consuls.
3. When Numa was king, the temple of Janus was built.
4. Caesar, after he had overcome the Gauls, waged war with Pompey.
5. On the death of Cato, there was no longer a republic.
6. Having learned these facts (things), he hastened against the enemy.
7. The soldiers, by hurling their javelins, broke the enemy’s line.
8. Having held a levy, the consuls sets out immediately for (ad) the army.
9. O my country, thou hast overcome my anger by employing a mother’s entreaties.
10. If we do this, we shall all be safe.

VOCABULARY.

ad-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, (move up, towards), apply, employ.
cōgnōscō, 3, -gnōvī, -gnitum [com, (g)nōscō], learn, recognize, know.
Collātinus, -ī, m., Collatinus, surname of L. Tarquinius.
con-iciō, 3, -iēci, -iectum [ja-ciō] (throw together), throw, hurl.
con-tendō, 3, -di, -tum (draw tight), exert one’s self, strive, hasten; contend.
con-vertō, 3, -ti, -sum, turn round, turn, change; sé convertere, turn one’s self, turn.
dēlectus, -ūs, m. [dēligō, choose out], selection, levy.
dē-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, put down, put by, lay down.
ex-pellō, 3, -puli, -pulsum, drive out or away, expel.
Jānus, -ī, m., Janus, the two-faced god.
per-fringō, 3, -frēgī, -fractum [frangō, break], break through, break.
Rhodus, -ī, r., Rhodes, an island in the Ægean.
sē-cēdō, 3, -cēsī, -cēssum, go apart, withdraw, retire.
statuō, 3, -ui, -ūtum, put, place; think, believe, determine.
stringō, 3, -nixī, strictum (draw tight), graze; draw, unsheathe.

1 No longer = nulla jam.
2 If we do this = this done.
CHAPTER LXV. 1.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

415. Examine the following:—

1. Pluit, it rains.
2. Tonat, it thunders.
3. Mē pudet stultitiae meae, I am ashamed (it shames me) of my folly.
4. Æum paenitet scoeris, he repents (it repents him) of his crime.
5. Pūgnābātur, fighting was going on (it was being fought).
6. Caesārī pārendum est, Caesar must be obeyed (it must be obeyed to Caesar).
7. Tībi licet exīre, you may go out (it is permitted to you to go out).
8. Hōc nōs facere oportet, we ought to do this (it behooves us to do this).
9. Caesārī placuit ut lēgātōs mitteret, Caesar determined (it pleased Caesar) to send ambassadors.

(1) Observe in each of the foregoing examples that the leading verb has no personal subject either expressed or implied. In 7, the subject of licet is the infinitive exīre; in 8, the phrase hōc nōs facere is the subject of oportet; in 9, the clause ut lēgātōs mitteret is the subject of placuit. In each of the first six the subject is contained in the verb itself.

(2) Some verbs, like pluit, tonat, pudet, paenitet, licet, the use of which is mostly confined to the third person singular, are called Impersonal Verbs; many others, as in the examples pūgnābātur, oportet, placuit, are sometimes used impersonally.

(3) Examples 7 and 8 show one way of rendering may and must into Latin.

(4) In 3 and 4 notice the use of the accusative and genitive after the verbs.

416. Rule of Syntax.—The impersonal verbs miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taeget take the accusa-

1 See 417. 2. 2 See 425. (4).
tive of the person and the genitive of the object or
cause of the feeling.

Some examples of verbs used impersonally have already been

417. Examine the following: —

**ACTIVE.**

1. Frātrī persuādet, he persuades
   his brother.
2. Lēgibus pārēbant, they obeyed
   the laws.
3. Crēdit mihi, he believes me.
4. Amīcis nōcent, they injure
   their friends.

**PASSIVE.**

Frātrī persuādētur, his brother
is persuaded.
Lēgibus pārēbātur, the laws
were obeyed.
Mihi crēditur, I am believed.
Amīcis nōcētur, their friends
are injured.

Observe that the verbs are intransitive. Compare the active
and passive in the examples one by one. Observe that in each
case the passive is expressed by putting the verb in the third
person singular, leaving the indirect object of the active unchanged.

418. Rule of Syntax. — Intransitive verbs are
used impersonally in the passive, the person or thing
affected (the subject in English) being expressed by
the dative.

419. Exercises.

I. 1. Omnēs decet rēctē agere. 2. Diū et ācriter pūgnā-
tum est. 3. Sequitur ut falsum sit. 4. Eōrum nōs miseret.1
5. Taedet mē vitae. 6. Stātuendum2 vōbis ante noctem est.
9. Trāditum est Scipionem doctum fuisse. 10. Eādem nocte
accidit ut esset lāna plēna. 11. Obsistitur illis. 12. Cui4

---

1 Compare 415. 3 and 4. 2 The duty of deciding is to you =
you must decide. Compare 425. 7. 3 It behooved us to do = we ought
to have done. 4 See 343.
[Observe that the following sentences are modelled closely on the foregoing, and on the illustrative examples. Cast each one into the Latin form before thinking of the Latin words; thus the fifth sentence will be changed to *It disgusts me of the folly, etc.*]

II. 1. It becomes us all to live well. 2. The battle will be fought bravely. 3. It followed that the enemy were defeated. 4. He was ashamed of his cowardice. 5. I am disgusted with the folly of the men. 6. What must we do? 7. What ought we to have done? 8. May I take the book? 9. It was reported to Cæsar that the enemy were approaching. 10. It resulted from these circumstances that all were silent. 11. The winds are opposed with difficulty. 12. Can the soldier be spared? 13. Are not the laws of the republic obeyed?

**420. VOCABULARY.**

deceps, 2. decuit, imper. it is seemly, becoming, fitting.
deceps, 3. gressus [gradior], go out, go forth, march out. Cf. execē.
fortiter, adv. [fortis], bravely, courageously.
licet, 2. -uit, or -itum est, imper. it is permitted, it is lawful, (one) may.
miseret, 2. -itum est, imper. [minor], it makes miserable, it excites pity, (one) pities.
ob-sistēs, 3. -stītī, -stitum, oppose, withstand, resist, w. dat.
opportet, 2. -uit, imper. it is necessary, it behooves, (one) must or ought.
parcēs, 3. pepercī (parsō), parsum, spare, w. dat.
ipget, 2. -uit, or -itum est, imper. it disgusts, (one) is disgusted.
pudet, 2. -uit, or -itum est, imper. it shames, (one) is ashamed.
pūgnō, 1 [pūgna], fight.
stultitia, -ae, f. [stultus, foolish], folly. (345. 11.)
taedet, 2. -uit, or taesum est, imper. it disgusts, wearies, (one) is disgusted.
vix, adv. hardly, with difficulty.

---

1 A result clause, ut, etc.
2 Compare 415. 3.
3 Compare 1. 8.
4 Compare 415. 7.
5 Fiēbat.
6 Rēs.
2.

421.

FOR TRANSLATION.

THE DEATH OF THE PET SPARROW.

Lugete, o Veneres Cupidinesque,
Et quantumst\(^1\) hominum\(^2\) venustiorum.
Passer mortuus est meae puellae,
Passer, deliciae meae puellae,
Quem plus illa oculis\(^3\) suis amabat:
Nam mellitus erat suamque\(^4\) norat\(^5\)
Ipsa\(^6\) tam bene quam puella matrem
Nec sese a gremio illius\(^7\) movebat,
Sed circumjiciens modo huc modo illuc
Ad solam dominam usque pipiabat.
Qui\(^8\) nunc it per iter tenebris obscum
Illuc unde negant redire quemquam.\(^9\)
At vos, male cit,\(^10\) malae tenebrae
Orci, quae omnia bella\(^11\) devoratis:
Tam bellum mihi\(^12\) passerem abstulistis.
O factum male!\(^13\) Io miselle passer!
Tua nunc opera\(^14\) meae puellae\(^15\)
Flendo turgiduli rubent\(^16\) ocelli.—Catullus.

---

1 For quantum est. Translate, all ye lovely ones, whoever ye are. What is it literally?
2 Depends on quantum. See 340.
3 Ablative after the comparative plus. See 212.
4 Supply dominam.
5 For növerat, but with the meaning of the imperfect.
6 With puella.
7 That is, puellae.
8 Refers to passer.
9 Subject acc. of redire. See 401 and 279. 6.
10 Ill betide you!
11 From bellus.
12 Translate my.
13 Factum male, woeful deed.
What is it literally?.
14 On your account.
15 Genitive after ocelli.
16 Turgiduli rubent, are all swollen and red.
CHAPTER LXVI. 1.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.—GERUNDIVE.

[Review the participles of the regular and irregular verbs.]

422. The future active participle with the verb sum forms the First, or Active Periphrastic Conjugation: amātūrus sum, eram, etc., I am, was, etc., about to (going to, intending to) love.

423. The gerundive with the verb sum forms the Second, or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation: amandus sum, eram, etc., I am, was, etc., to be loved; I deserve, ought, etc., to be loved.

424. ACTIVE.

PARADIGMS.

INDICATIVE.

PASSIVE.

Pres. amātūrus sum  amandus sum
Imper. amātūrus eram  amandus eram
Fut. amātūrus erō  amandus erō
Perf. amātūrus fuī  amandus fuī
Plup. amātūrus fueram  amandus fueram
F.P. amātūrus fuerō  amandus fuerō

etc.

etc.

425. Examine the following:—

1. Nōn dubitō quīn monitūrus sit, I do not doubt that he will advise.
2. Nōn dubitō quīn futūrum sit ut id fiat, I do not doubt that (it will happen that it be done) it will be done.
3. Scīebam quid actūrus essēs, I knew what you were going to do.
4. Pontem faciendum cūrat, he (taxes are a bridge to be built) has a bridge built.
5. Dēlenda est Carthāgō, Carthage must be destroyed.
6. Caesarī omnia erant agenda, everything had to be done by Caesar.
7. Mihi scribendum est, (the duty of writing is to me) I must write.
8. Omnibus moriendum est, (the necessity of dying is to all) ali must die.

9. Vóbís júdició utendum est, (the duty of using judgment is to you) you ought to use judgment.

(1) The first three examples show how a future tense may be supplied for the subjunctive mood.

(2) Observe in the fourth example the use of the gerundive agreeing with a noun which is the object of cùrō, the whole expression denoting to have a thing done.

(3) The last five examples show some uses of the passive periphrastic conjugation. Notice that the idea of necessity, or duty, is prominent in these forms.

(4) In 7, 8, and 9 the verbs are used impersonally, that is, without any personal subject, the gerundive being in the nominative singular neuter. This impersonal use belongs to transitive verbs without an object expressed, and to intransitive verbs. For the case of júdiciō, see 304.

(5) In the last four examples, Caesarī, mihi, omnibus, and vóbís, denote in each case the person to whom there is a duty or necessity of doing something. This dative is most conveniently rendered with by, and is called the Dative of Agent.

426. Rule of Syntax. — The dative is used with the gerundive to denote the person by whom the act must be done.¹

2.

427. Exercises.


¹ How is the agent with a verb in the passive otherwise and commonly expressed?

II. 1. There is no doubt that you are going to be a hero. 2. I doubt not that you will see the games. 3. Do not doubt\(^1\) that he will be present. 4. Do you know what he is going to do? 5.\(^2\) We ought to cultivate virtue. 6.\(^2\) I must give the signal. 7.\(^2\) We ought to read the poets. 8. The commander must be obeyed.\(^3\) 9. The boy is not to be believed. 10. The town had to be fortified.

3.

\textit{428.}

	extbf{EXERCISES.}

I. 1. Quaesīvit ex orāculō Croesus utrum ipsum superātūrus esset. 2. Nōn erat dubium quīn Falisci sēsē Rōmānīs dēdi-
tūrī essent. 3. Nisi vīnum dēficisset, plūra et graviōra
dictūrī fuimus. 4. Māgnam in spem veniēbat fore\(^4\) ut
pertināciā dēsisteret hostis. 5. Cum Scipīo, graviter vulne-
rātus, in hostium manūs jamjam ventūrus esset, filius eum
perīculō liberāvit. 6. Hoc cēnseō et Carthāginem esse
dēlendam. 7. Aemilius līberōs Graecīs litterīs erudiendōs\(^5\)
cūrāverat. 8. Caesarī dandum erat tubā signum. 9. Mihi
ūtendum est jādiciō meō.\(^6\) 10. Ita nōbīs vivendum est, ut
ad mortem parātī sīminus.

II. 1. I will ask of the general whether he is going to
advance. 2. Who doubts that the Romans will surrender
themselves to the Faliscans? 3.\(^7\) If words had not failed, I
was going to write a longer letter. 4. I think the enemy
will be defeated. 5. When Cæsar was on the point of

\(^1\) Nōli dubitāre. How else may this be expressed?
\(^2\) Express in two ways—by using \textit{opertet}, and then by the
gerundive.
\(^3\) Lit. \textit{it must be obeyed to the commander}. Cf. \textit{415}. 6.
\(^4\) \textit{Fore = futūrum esse}, \textit{to be about to be}, may be omitted in
translation.
\(^5\) Compare \textit{425}. 4, and (2).
\(^7\) Compare I. 3.
starting for Rome, he received a letter from Pompey.
6. My opinion is that the town ought to be besieged.
7. These things must not be despised by us.
8. A wise man will have his boys trained in Latin literature.
9. The citizens must obey the laws.
10. The soldiers must use their own judgment.

429. VOCABULARY.

Aemilius, -i, m., Aemilius, a Roman consul.
censeō, 2, -ni, -num, estimate; think, deem, be of opinion.
Cresus, -i, m., Cræsus, king of Lydia.
dē-dō, 3, -didi, -ditum, (put away from one’s self) surrender, deliver up.
dē-ficīō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [facīō], (make away from) revolt; fail, be wanting.
dē-sistō, 3, -stītī, -stītum, (stand off or apart) leave off, cease, desist.
doctus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of doceō], learned.
gravis, -e, adj., heavy, serious.
graviter, adv., heavily, seriously.
ita, adv., thus, so.
jamjam, adv., already; jamjam ventūrs, on the point of coming.
jūdicium, -i, n. [jūdicō], judgment, opinion.
op-pūgnō, 1 [ob], attack, assault, besiege.
ōrāculum, -i, n. [ōrō], oracle.
parātus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of parō], ready, prepared.
pertinacia, -ae, f. [pertināx, persistent], perseverance, obstinacy.
(345. 11.)
signum, -i, n., mark, sign, signal.
ūtor, 3, ūsus, use, employ, w. abl.
utrum, adv., whether. Cf. num, 382.

jūdicō, censeō, existimō, arbitrōr, putō, and opinōr, all mean think; but the first four imply more deliberation and reflection; primarily think as a judge, a magistrate, an appraiser, an arbiter; hence, in general, of official, authoritative opinion. Putō and opinōr imply rather private, personal judgment or opinion.

1 On the point of starting = already about to start.
2 This I think. Cf. I. 6.
3 See 425. (5).
4 Cf. I. 7, and 425. (2).
5 Compare 232. I. 4.
6 Ā civibus, to distinguish the agent from the indirect object.
CHAPTER LXVII.

GERUND. — GERUNDIVE. — SUPINE.

430. Learn the gerunds and supines of the regular and irregular verbs.

GERUND.

431. Examine the following: —

G. Caesar loquendo finem facit, Caesar makes an end of speaking.
   Cupidus est tē audiendī, he is desirous of hearing you.
D. Aqua utilis est bibendō, water is useful for drinking.
   Ac. Inter pugnam trīginta nāvēs captae sunt, during the fight (amid the fighting) thirty ships were taken.
   Ab. Mēns discendō alitur, the mind is strengthened by learning.

1. The above examples illustrate the use of the gerund in its several cases. It will be seen that the gerund is used like the English verbal noun in *ing*. The nominative is supplied in Latin by the infinitive; *e.g.*, *vidēre* est *crēdere*, seeing is believing.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

432. Examine the following: —

G. Cōnsilia { urbem dēlendī, } plans for (of) destroying the city.
   { urbis dēlendae, }
D. Operam dat { agrōs colendō (rare), } he devotes himself to tilling the fields.
   { agrīs colendīs, }
   Ac. Vēnērunt ad { pācem petendum (rare), } they came to sue for peace.
   { pācem petendam, }
   Ab. Occupātus sum in { litterās scribendō (rare), } I was engaged in writing letters.
   { litterīs scribendīs, }

1. What is to be particularly studied in the above examples is the difference between the gerund and the gerundive construction, as shown within the braces. Observe (1) that the *gerund* is put in the required case, and has its object in the accusative; (2) that the *noun* is put in the required case, and the gerundive agrees with it.
2. Except in the genitive, where the two constructions are about equally common, the gerundive construction is almost always preferred.

3. Notice that the accusative of the gerund or gerundive with ad denotes a purpose. This construction is much used. In what other ways may a purpose be expressed?

SUPINE.

433. Examine the following: —

1. Lēgātī Rōmam veniunt pācem petītum, ambassadors come to Rome to sue for peace.

2. Id perfacile est factū, that is very easy to do, or to be done.

Observe in the first example that the supine petītum has the same meaning as ut petant, quī petant, or ad petendam; that is, it expresses purpose. This use is common after verbs of motion.

434. Rule of Syntax. — The supine in um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.

In the second example the supine in ā answers the question in what respect? Perfacile factū, easy in respect to the doing. This use is common after adjectives.

The supine in ā is really an ablative of specification. See 260.

435. Exercises.


1 From a desire; abl. of cause. 2 See 270. 2. 3 The ablative causā, for the sake of, follows its genitive.
II. 1. You will have time to lead (of leading) out the army from that place. 2. He undertook the war for the sake of destroying the republic. 3. Bodies are nourished by eating and drinking. 4. While drinking we conversed about many things. 5. Many leaders had assembled to see Scipio. 6. Night put an end to the fighting. 7. This seems (to be) a suitable place for building a house. 8. The enemy had entertained the hope of getting possession of the camp. 9. A multitude of men came together to witness the games. 10. It is difficult to say what he will do.

**436. VOCABULARY.**

ad-imō, 3, -ēmi, -ēptum [ēmō], take away, remove.
alō, 3, -ui, -tum, nourish, strengthen, support.
ante-cēdō, 3, -cēssi, -cēsum, go before.
auxilium, -i, n. [augeō], help, aid, support; pl. auxiliaries.
co-lequor, 3, -locūtus [com], speak together, converse.
com-mūniō, 4, (fortify strongly) secure, intrench.
con-veniō, 4, -vēni, -ventum [com], come together, assemble.
cunctor, 1, linger, hesitate.
cēdō, edere or ēsse, ēdi, ēsum or ēssum, cat.
ex-plōro, 1, search out, examine, explore; reconnoitre.
Fabius, ī, x., Fabius, a Roman general.
hauriō, 4, hausī, haustum, draw (water), drain, drink up.
opportunus, -a, -um, adj., fit, convenient, suitable; opportune.
re-stituō, 3, -ui, -útum [statuō], (replace) give back, return, restore.
sus-cipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [sub, capiō], undertake.

---

1 Causā. See p. 209, note 3.
2 Inter bibendum.
3 Express in three ways.
4 Put an end to = make an end of.
5 Entertain the hope = come into the hope.
6 What case with potior?
7 Why must the subjunctive be used? What tense of the subjunctive to express future time? What form expresses the immediate future?
READING LESSONS.

LETTERS: CICERO TO HIS WIFE TERENTIA.

437. B.C. 49.
Si valēs, bene est, valeō.1 Dā operam2 ut convalēscās. Quod opus3 erit, ut4 rēs tempusque postulat, prōvidcās5 atque administrēs; et ad mē dē omnibus rēbus quam6 saepissime litterās mittās. Valē.

438. B.C. 49.
S. V. B. E. F.7 V. Valētūdinem tuam velim8 cūrēs9 diligentissimē.10 Nam mihi et11 scriptum et nuntiatum est tē12 in febrim subitē incidisse. Quod13 celeriter mē fecisti dē Caesaro litterās certōrem,14 fecisti mihi gratum. Item posthāc, si quid15 opus erit,16 si quid acciderit novi,17 faciēs18 ut sciam. Cūrā ut valeās. Valē.

---

1 The Romans often began their letters with these five words, or rather with the abbreviations S. V. B. E. V.
2 Give labor = try.
3 An indeclinable noun, need; opus est, is necessary.
4 What indicates that ut does not mean in order that?
5 The hortatory subjunctive. See 390.
6 Quam strengthens the superlative; quam saepissime, as often as possible.
7 For ego.
8 I could wish; volō, I wish.
9 Equivalent to ut cūrēs.
10 Notice the emphatic position of the adverb, after the verb.
11 Et... et, both... and.
12 Subj. of incidisse. See 401.
13 In that.
14 Fecisti... certōrem, made more certain = informed.
15 Anything; quid is regularly used instead of quidem after si, nisi, nē, and num.
16 See note 3, above.
17 Of new; partitive genitive.
18 A future equivalent to the imperative. Faciēs ut sciam, inform me. What is it literally?
439. B.C. 46.

Si valēs, bene est.\(^1\) Cōnstituerāmus, ut\(^2\) ad tē anteā scripseram, obviam Cicerōnem\(^3\) Caesarī mittere; sed mūtā-vimus cōnsilium, quia dē illius\(^4\) adventū nihil audiēbāmus. Dē cēterīs rēbus, etsi nihil erat novī,\(^5\) tamen quid velīmus\(^6\) ct quid hoc tempore putēmus\(^6\) opus\(^7\) esse ex Siccā\(^8\) poteris cōgnōscere. Tulliam adhūc mēcum teneō. Valētūdinem tuam cūrā\(^9\) diligenter. Valē.

440. B.C. 46.

\(^{10}\) S. V. B. E. V. Nōs neque dē Caesarīs adventū neque dē litterīs quās Philotūmus habēre dīcitur, quidquām\(^{11}\) adhūc certī\(^{12}\) habēmus. Si quid erit certī, faciam tē statim certiō-rem.\(^{13}\) Valētūdinem tuam fac\(^{14}\) ut cūrēs. Valē.

---

\(^1\) Compare this form of beginning a letter with those of the two preceding.

\(^2\) Compare the use of ut in 437, line 2.

\(^3\) That is, his son Cicero.

\(^4\) That is, Caesar's.

\(^5\) Genitive neuter of novus depending on nihil. Compare the same word in 438, and the note.

\(^6\) Translate the words quid velīmus, etc., just as they stand.

\(^7\) Compare opus erit in 437 and 438, and the note.

\(^8\) A friend of Cicero.

\(^9\) Compare with this the beginning and the ending of 438.

\(^10\) Observe how nearly this letter can be translated in the order of the Latin words.

\(^{11}\) Anything at all. To express anything at all, after a negative word, as here after neque, the Romans used quidquām, not aliquid. See 279. 6.

\(^{12}\) Genitive neuter of certus, depending on quidquām. Compare novī in 438 after quid, and in 439 after nihil.

\(^{13}\) Compare fecisti certiōrem in 438, and the note.

\(^{14}\) See p. 150, note. Fae ut cūrēs, be sure to take care. What is the literal meaning? Compare with this the endings of the two preceding letters.
441. De Vitiis Hominum.

Juppiter nóbís duás pérás imposuit: alteram, quae nostrís vitíüs repléta est, post tergum nóbís dedit; alteram autem, quà aliórum vitia continentur, ante pectus nostrum suspendit. Quærē nón vidēmus quae ipsī peccāmus; si autem alii peccant, statin eós vituperāmus.

442. Mulier et Gallina.


443. Vulpes et Úva.

Vulpēs ûvam in vīte cōnspicāta ad illam subsiliēt omnium virium suārum contentiōne, sī cam forte attingere posset.

1 With imposuit; has placed on us.
2 Alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other.
3 Quā = in quā pērā.
4 Compare ante pectus nostrum with post tergum nōbis.
5 What we sin = what sins we commit. On ipsī, see 270. 4.
6 For her.
7 Illam = illam gallinam, subject of cēlāre.
8 Nisi quod = praeter id quod.
9 Is wont = is usually.
10 Gapes for = is greedy for. Notice here a peculiarity of the Latin: the present is used after dum, though the perfect perdidit follows. The English idiom requires us to translate such a present by the imperfect, was greedy for.
11 Supply the Latin noun in the proper form.
12 Perfect participle of cōnspicor, agreeing with vulpēs. Translate by the present participle.
13 With the exertion.
Tandem deficit gata inani labora disceddens, "At nunc etiam," inquit, "acerbae sunt, nec eas in via repertas tolleram."  

444. RUSTICUS ET CANIS FIDELIS.  


445. Puer MENDAX.  

Puer in prato ovis passebat, atque per iucum clamentabat, ut sibi auxilium ferraret, quasi lupus gregem esse atorserat. Agricolae undique succurrabant, neque lupum inveniabant. Ita ter quaterque se elusos a pueri videreunt. Deinde cum ipse lupus aggredere tur, et puer re vera imploraret au-  

---  

1 The plural, as if uvae had been used.  
2 Eas repertas, them found — if I had found them.  
3 Would I pick them up.  
4 The so called dative of the agent with custodiendum. Translate, left for his . . . dog to guard.  
5 Literally, to be guarded.  
7 For the subjunctive, see 373.  
8 Present for perfect, called historical present.  
9 Translate as if it were restituerat; after ubi, ut, and postquam, meaning when, the perfect indicative is commonly used, but it is best rendered by the pluperfect.  
10 Translate, for the deed.  
11 Too late.  
12 The imperfect, denoting customary action; render, used to tend.  
13 But . . . not.  
14 See p. 106, note 1.  
15 Really. See 270. 9.  
16 Re vera, in earnest.
xilium, nēmō gregī subvēnit, et ovēs lupī praeda sunt factae. Mendācī hominī nōn crēdīmus, etiam cum vēra dicit.

446. **Senex et Mors.**


447. **Vulpēs et Leō.**


---

1 Cf. succurrō. See 343. How does the meaning help come from the primitive meaning?  
2 Predicate nominative.  
3 Why dative? See 343.  
4 From caedō, not cadō.  
5 From tollō, not sufferō.  
6 For the subjunctive, see 373.  
7 Notice the order: the genitives coming first are made emphatic.  
8 Abl. of separation. See 130.  
9 See p. 214, note 8.  
10 Umerīs . . . impōnās, cf. nōbīs . . . imposuit in 441.  
11 Quaesō impōnās = quaesō ut impōnās.  
12 Is this clause a purpose or result clause? See illustrative examples, 352 and 368. Are the clauses beginning with cum temporal or causal? Read again the illustrative examples, 372 and 374.  
13 Of fright.  
14 The third time.  
15 To such a degree was not frightened = was so far from being frightened.
CAESAR'S TWO INVASIONS OF BRITAIN.

448. [In the latter part of the summer of B.C. 55, Caesar brought his ships together into the country of the Morini, who occupied the seacoast from the modern Boulogne northward, and set sail for Britain.]

Caesar ipse cum omnibus cópiis in Morinôs proficiscitur, quod\(^1\) inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trájectus. Húc návēs\(^2\) undique ex finitimís regionibus et quam\(^3\) superiōre aestâte\(^4\) effécerat clásem jubet convenire.

Nactus\(^5\) időneam ad navigandum tempestátem, tertiā ferē\(^6\) vigiliā solvit, equitāque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et návēs cōnsecendere et sē sequī jussit. Ipse hōrā\(^7\) circiter diēi quartā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigis, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cópiās armātās cōnspexit. Hunc\(^8\) ad ēgregiendum nēquāquam időneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliqua návēs eō conveniērent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs\(^9\) exspectāvit. Tum ventum et aescum ānō tempore nactus secundum,\(^10\) datō signō et sublatīs ancorīs, circiter

---

\(^1\) Because.
\(^2\) Subject acc., together with clásem, of convenire.
\(^3\) Goes with clásem. Translate aloud the whole sentence, first following strictly the order of the Latin words, and rendering quām, what. Probably the meaning will then be clear, and your translation can be recast into good English.

This method of discovering the meaning of a Latin sentence, as distinguished from that of trying to determine first the subject and predicate, and then the modifiers of each, will often be found very helpful.

\(^4\) Ablative of time when. See 136.
\(^6\) See p. 154, note 1. In translating to jussit, observe the suggestion in note 3.
\(^7\) Translate as if the order were circiter quartā hōrā diēi, but observe that circiter is here an adverb, and hōrā has the construction of aestâte, line 4, and vigiliā, line 6.

\(^8\) Goes with locum.
\(^9\) In ancoris, at anchor.
\(^10\) Goes with ventum and aescum.
milia passuum septem ab eō locō progressus, aperīō āc plānō litore¹ nāvēs constituit. At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnītō, nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi² prohibēbant.

[It seemed for a time as if Caesar would not be able to effect a landing at all. The Britons, barbari, as Caesar calls them, some standing on the edge of the shore, or advancing into the water, others driving in their horses with their two-wheeled chariots a little way, to get nearer to the ships, fought the Romans manfully. But they had to deal with an enemy as brave and determined as themselves, and the Romans were fighting under the eye of Caesar. At last one daring soldier showed them how to conquer.]


[As a result of this fight, and of some subsequent defeats, the Britons submitted to Caesar, who soon after returned to Gaul.

¹ We should expect in litore.
² From disembarking. Cf. prōgressus, ēgrediendum, prōgredi, above. It is by vigilant observation in reading, and comparison of different forms from the same root, rather than from incessant resort to vocabularies and dictionaries, that the task of getting a working knowledge of Latin words is to be accomplished. "Recollect that brains and common sense, not thumbs, should get most exercise."
³ Subject of inquit. Observe the suggestion of p. 216, note 3.
⁴ Do not translate thing.
⁵ Always placed after one or more of the words quoted.
⁶ Meum ... officium, my to the public and to the general duty. Mark the order, and see how it gives emphasis to meum.
⁷ When, not with. See 373.
⁸ Cohortātī inter sē, encouraging each other.
⁹ Cf. dēsilīte, above.
¹⁰ From uterque.
The following summer, B.C. 54, Caesar prepared for a second invasion of Britain. With about 20,000 foot-soldiers and 2,000 horsemen, he set sail from Portus Itius, which is probably the modern Wissant, and landed in the neighborhood of Deal. There are many reasons for supposing that these were the places of the embarkation and landing of the preceding year.

Caesar ad portum Itium, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam träjectum esse cōgnōverat, circiter miliarium passuum trīgintā a continentī, cum legiōnibus pervēnit. Ibi cōgnōscit sexāgintā nāvēs, quae in Mēlās factae erant, tempestāte rējectās currum tenēre non potuisse atque eōdem unde erant profectae revertīsse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rōbus istrōctās invēnit. Eōdem equitātūs tōūs Galliae convēnit numerō miliarum quattuor, prīncipēsque ex omnibus civitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sé fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidium locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat; quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliāe verēbatūr.

Itaque diēs circiter vīgintī quaēque in eō locō commorātūs, quod cōrus ventus nāvigationēm impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in ēis locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem mīlitēs equitēsque cōnsendere in nāvēs jūbet.

---

1. *Commodissimum...träjectum.* Compare the order in line 2, p. 216, and 7, p. 217. In trying this first sentence, change mentally the order *quō ex* to *ex quō*; then observe the suggestion of note 3, p. 216.


3. Subject acc. of *potuisse* and *revertīsse.* Try this sentence by the method already recommended.

4. From *rēlictō.*

5. For irregularity of declension, see 200.

6. In *number = to the number.*

7. In *sē,* towards himself.


9. *Obsidum locō,* in the place of hostages = as hostages.

10. From *dēcernō.*

11. From *cōnsuēscō.*


Labienō in continentē cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum mulibus duobus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rem frumentārium prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gerenturur cognōsceret, consiliūnumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum quem in continentī relinquēbat sōlis occasā nāvēs solvit; et lēnī Afrīcō pro vectus, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam con spirinx.

Accēssum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō fērō tempore, neque in eō locō hostīs est visus; sed, ut posteq Caesar ex captīvīs cognōvit, cum māgnae manūs có convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, ā litore discēserant āc sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

Caesar, expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cognōvit quō in locō hostīnum cópiāe consē dissent, de tertīa vigilīā ad hostēs contendit. Nocētū progressus mīlia passuum circiter duodecim hostīnum cópiās conspicātus est. Illī equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen progressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsī ab equitāte sē in silvās

---

1 Labienō . . . relictō. See 412.

2 Quaeque = et quae. The que connects prōvidēret and cognōsceret: and might find out what was going on in Gaul.

3 Prō tempore et prō rē, as the time and circumstances required.

4 Quīnque legiōnibus. See top of page 218.

5 Parī . . . quem, with a number equal (to that) which.


7 Ortā lūce, light having arisen = at daybreak; ortā, from orior.

8 Supply manū; under the left hand = on the left.

9 Accēssum est ad, it was one to = they reached. See 415 (2).

10 See p. 164, note 1.

11 Concessive. See 375.

12 From abdō.

13 Quō in locō, in what place. Compare for order quō ex portū, p. 218, line 1.

14 From consīdō.


16 Compare for meaning conspexit, line 7.

17 Sē abdidērunt: cf. line 13.
abdiderunt, locum nancérēgregiē et nátūrā et opere mūnītum. 
Ipsī ex silvis rāriōprūpūgnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs 
ingredīōprohibēbant. At militēs legiōnēs septimae testūdine 
factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adjectō, locum cēpērunt cōs-
que ex silvis expulērunt, pāncis vulneribus acceptīs. Sed 
eōs fugientēs longiusCaesar prōsequī vēnuīt, et quod lōcī 
nātūrām īgnōrābat, et quod māgnā parte dīēi cōnsūmptā 
mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

Postrīdiē ējus dīēī mane tripartitō militēs equītēsque in 
expeditionem mīsit, ut eōs quī fūgerant perpetuerentur.

[While Cāsar was in pursuit of the enemy, messengers came to 
tell him that a violent wind had dashed his ships upon the shore 
and broken up many of them, so that he was obliged to return. 
Ten days were spent in hauling the ships up on land and strongly 
intrenching them; then, leaving men to guard and repair them, 
he resumed his advance.

Cāsar crossed the Thames where the river was fordable, at 
what point is uncertain, meeting all the time with a determined 
resistance from theBritons, but at last forcing them to submission. 
The brave Cossivellaunus, chief of the Britons, did his best to 
defend his country, and showed himself a worthy antagonist even 
of Cāsar; nor would he yield to the Roman till his principal de-
pendenēs had dispersed with their troops and deserted him. The 
autumnal equinox was now at hand, and Cāsar thought it unsafe 
to remain longer in Britain.]

Obsidibus acceptīs exercitūm reducēt ad mare, nāvēs8 
invenīt refectās. His dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum māgnō 
numerum habēbat, et nōminālēs tempestātē deperierant9 
nāvēs, duōbus commēctībus exercitūm reportāre institūtū, 9c,
summa tranquillitati, secundam inuit cum solvisset vigilia, prima luce terram attigit omnèsque incolumēs naves perdixit.

THE CUSTOMS AND HABITS OF THE BRITONS.

449. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsa memoriam prōditum dicunt; maritima pars ab iis qui praedae ac bellī inferendi causā ex Belgis transierant. Hominum est infinita multitūdō erēberrimaque aedificia, ferē Gallicēs consimilia; pectorum māgnus numeros. Ùtuntur aut aere, aut nummō aereō, aut tāleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinātis pro nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed ī jus exiguā est cōpia. Māteria cūjusque caelestis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fas nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptātisque causā.

Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimi quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnīs, neque multum a Gallicē differunt consuetūdine. Interiōres plérique frūmenta nōn servant, sed lacte et carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt

1 From incō; with vigilia.
3 Quōs natōs, whom (to have been) born in the island itself, by memory (to have been) handed down, they say. That is, who, they say, according to tradition (memoria prōditum), were born in the island itself.
4 Supply esse, as also with natōs.
5 How otherwise might this be?
6 Praedae ... causā. See p. 209, note 1.
7 From aes.
8 Supply esse.
9 For the sake of their mind and pleasure = for pastime. Cf. for the order praedae ... causā, note 6.
10 Understand ii, those, as the antecedent of quī. See p. 130, note 3.
11 Interiōres plérique, the people of the interior for the most part.
12 From carō.
vestítī. Omnès vērō sē Britanniī vitrō insiciunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hoc horridiorēs sunt in pūgnā adspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā præcter caput et labrum superius.

1 On this account.
2 In appearance. See 260.
3 Capillō . . . prōmissō: descriptive ablative (341). They are with long hair = they let their hair grow long.
4 Parte . . . rāsā: another descriptive ablative. They are with every part of the body shaven = they shave the whole body. Rāsā, from rādō.
VOCABULARIES.
LATIN—ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

In this vocabulary words inclosed in brackets are, in most cases, those which are given in Latin lexicons and special vocabularies as the primitives of those against which they are set. But, except in compounds, it would be more correct to regard the bracketed words as connected with the others in formation from a common root or stem. It is on this ground that such instances will be found as metus referred to metuō, and metuō to metus. Neither is, strictly speaking, derived from the other, but both are formed from the stem metu.

Words printed in Gothic Italic type are at once derivatives and definitions. Many other more or less remotely derived words, not definitions, are added in small capitals.

It will be seen that comparisons of words in reference to meaning are much more frequent than is usual in special vocabularies. This has been done from the conviction that the pupil should make such comparisons frequently from the outset.

ā or ab

ā or ab, prep. w. abl., away from, by.
ab-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, remove, conceal. Cf. cēlō.
ab-dūcō, 3, -düxi, -ductum, lead away, take off.
ab-eō, -ire, -iù, -itum, go from, go off, go away. (327.)
ab-icīō, 3, -jēci, -jectum [jaciō], throw off, throw down.
abieōs, -eis, r., fir-īrece. (11, 4.)
ab-sum, -esse, āfuī, be away, absent, distant; with ā or ab and abl.
āc, conj., see atque.
ac-cēdō, 3, -cēssi, -cēssum [ad], go or come near, approach. Acceěe. Cf. appropinquo.
ac-cendō, 3, - Cinder, -census [ad, and supposed candō], kindle, inflame.
acciō, 3, -cidī, — [ad, cadō], fall upon, fall out, happen. Accident. Cf. incidō and evenō.
acciōnō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [ad, capiō], (take to), receive, accept; suffer.

ad-imō

accūsō, 1 [ad, causa], accuse.
ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., sharp, keen; active. (150.) Acūm. Cf. acūtus.
acērbus, -a, -um, adj. [ācer], bitter, sour, harsh.
acēs, -ēi, r., [ācer], edge; order of battle.
ācriter, adv. [ācer], sharply, eagerly.
acētus, -a, -um, adj. [aceō, sharpen], sharp. Cf. ācer.
ad, prep. w. acc., to, towards, near.
ad-eō, adv., to this, thus far; so, so very.
ad-eō, -īre, -ī, -itum, go to, approach, visit. (327.)
ad-ferō, adferre, attulī, allātum (adī), bear to, bring. (321.)
ad-hūc, adv., hitherto, up to this time.
ad-flō, 1, blow upon.
ad-icīō, 3, -jēci, -jectum [jaciō], (throw to or against), add, join to.
ad-imō, 3, -emī, -emptum [emō], (take to one's self from another), take away, remove.
ad-ipiscor, 3, adeptus [aspicer],
get, obtain. Cf. potior.
ad-jungō, 3, -jūnī, -jūntum, add,
join.  Adjunct.
ad-juvō, 1, -jūvī, -jūtum, aid, help.
ad-ministrō, 1, manage, do, perform, administer.
ad-nīrōr, 1, wonder at, admire.
ad-modum, adv., very.
ad-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum (move
up or towards), apply, employ.
ad-orīōr, 4, -ortus (rise up against),
attack. Cf. aggressor.
ad-rēpō, 3, -rēpī, -rēptum, creep
towards, steal slowly up.
ad-spiciō (asp), 3, -spēxī, -spect
atum [ad, speciō], look at; look.
ad·spectus, -ūs, m. [adspiciō], sight,
appearance, aspect.
ad-sum, -esse, -iū (asfiū), be pres
ent, stand by, side with, w. dat.
adulēscēns, -entis, m. and f. [ado
lescō, grow], youth, young person.
Adolescence. Cf. juvenis.
ad-venīō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, come
to, arrive. Cf. perveniō.
adventus, -ūs, m. [advenīō], ap
proach, arrival. Advent.
ad·versus, prep. w. acc., against, towards.
ad-versus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of ad
vertō], opposite, opposed, adverse;
rés adversae, adversity.
aedificium, -i, n. [aedificō], build
ing. Edifice.
aedificō, 1 [aedis, faciō], build.
aedis (es), -is, f., building, temple;
plur., house.
aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj., sick, weak, feeble. (71.)
Aemilius, -i, m., Æmilius, a Roman
consul. (79.)
aequis, -a, -um, adj., level, equal;
noun, equal in age, companion.
aequeus, -a, -um, adj., level, equal;
calm.
Ær, æris, m., air.
aereus, -a, -um [aes], of copper, of
bronze.
aes, æris, x., copper, bronze; money.
aestās, -ātis, f., summer.
aestus, -ūs, m., tide.
aetūs, -ātis, r., age, time of life.
(105.)
a·flīgō, 3, -xī, -ctum [ad], cast
down, prostrate, ruin.
Africa, -ae, r., Africa.
Āfricanus, -i, m. [Africa], Afri
canus, surname of Scipio.
Āfricus, -i, m., south-west (wind).
ager, agrī, m., field, territory. Cf.
campus. (65.)
agger, -erīs, m. [ad, gerō], (what is
carried to, i.e.) materials for a
mound; mound, rampart.
aggregō, 3, -gressus [ad, gradīor],
go to; attack. Aggressive. Cf.
adōrīor.
agitō, 1 [frequentative of agō],
shake, disturb, vex, chase. Agi
tate.
āgnōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nītum [ad,
(g)nōscō, know], recognize. Cf.
cōgnōscō.
agō, 3, ēgī, ēctum, drive, lead, act,
do.
agricola, -ae, m. [ager, colō],
farmer.
agrig cultūra, -ae, r. [ager, colō],
agriculture. Cf. agricola.
āla, -ae, r., wing.
albus, -a, -um, adj., white. Cf.
candidus.
Alexander, -drī, m., Alexander,
king of Macedon.
aiēnus, -a, -um, adj. [ailus],
belonging to another; another's.
Alien.
alimentum, -i, n. [alō], nourishment, food, provisions.

aliquandō, adv. [alias], at some time, ever; formerly, once. Cf. ōlim.

aliquis, -qua, quid (-quod), indef. pron., some one, some. (270.)

alius, -a, -ud, adj., another, other; alius...alius, one...another. (201.)

al-loquor [adv], 3, -locutus [ad], speak to, address.

alō, 3, -uī, -itum and -tum, nourish, support, strengthen; keep.

Alpēs, -ium, pl., the Alps.

alter, -era, -crum, adj., the other (of two); alter...alter, the one...the other; asnum, adj., second. (200.)

altus, -a, -um, adj., high, deep.

ambō, -ae, -ō, num. adj., both.

ambulō, 1, walk; take a walk.

America, -ae, f., America.

amicitia, -ae, f. [amicus], friendship.

amicus, -a, -um, adj. [amō], friendly; noun, friend.

ā-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, send away, let go, lose. Cf. perdō.

anims, -is, m., river. (154, 172.)

amō, 1, love, like, be fond of. (319.)

amplus, -a, -um, adj., large, splendid, renowned. Ample.

an, conj., or, used in the second member of a double question.

ancilla, -ae, f., maid-servant.

ancora, -ae, f., anchor.

Ancus, -ī, Ancus, fourth king of Rome.

Androclus, -ī, m., Androclus.

anguis, -is, m., snake, serpent. (154.)


animal, -ālis, n. [-ānima, breath], living being, animal. (149.)

animus, -i, m., mind, soul, spirit. (273.)

annus, -i, m., year. Annual.

ānser, -eris, m., goose.

ante, prep. w. acc., before.

anteā, adv. [ante], before.

ante-cēdō, 3, -cēssī, -cēsum, go before. Cf. antecēō.

ante-cēō, -cre, -iī, ——, go before, surpass. Cf. antecēdō.

antiquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante], old, ancient. Antiquity. Cf. vetus.

ānulus, -i, m., ring, finger-ring.

aper, apri, m., wild boar.

aperīō, 4, -uī, -tum, open.

apertus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of aperīō], uncovered, open.

ap-pellō, 2 [ad], address, call, name. Appeal.

ap-petō, 3, -īvī, or -iī, -itum [ad], seek after, strive for.

ap-propinquō, 1 [ad], come near, approach. Cf. accēdō.

aptō, 1, fit, apply, adjust. Adapt.

apud, prep. w. acc., with, by, near, among.

Āpūlia, -ae, f., Apulia, a division of Italy.

aqua, -ae, f., water. Aquatic.

aquila, -ae, f., eagle.

āra, -ae, f., altar.

arātrum, -ī, n. [arō], plough.

arbītror, 1, think, suppose, believe. (429.)

arbor, -oris, p., tree.

arceō, 2, -uī, -tum, keep off.

arcus, -ūs, m., bow. Arc.

Ariovistus, -ī, m., Ariovistus, king of a German tribe.

arma, -ōrum, n. [armō], arms, weapons, tools.

armō, 1 [arma], arm, equip.

arō, 1, plough.
Arpīnum, -i, n., Arpīnum, a town in Italy.
ars, artis, f., art.
Arvum, -i, n. [arō], ploughed land, field.
Arx, arcis, v., citadel. (163.)
Ascalaphus, -i, m., Ascalaphus.
Asia, -ae, v., Asia.
asper, -era, -erum, adj., rough, harsh, severe. Asperity.
Asylum, -i, n., place of refuge, asylum.
at, conj., but. (393.)
átum, -tra, -trum, adj., black, sable.
Athēnae, -ārum, v., Athēnae.
Athēnēnisis, -e, adj., [Athēnae], of Athēnae, Athenian.
at-que (before vowels and consonants, Æ before consonants only) [ad, in addition], and also, and especially, and. Cf. et and -que.
atrox, -ōcis, adj. [átēr], savage, fierce, harsh, cruel. Atrocious.
Atticus, -i, m., Atticus, a friend of Cicero.
Attingō, 3, -tigi, -tactum [ad, tangō], touch, approach, arrive at, reach.
auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō. increase], maker, author.
auctorītās, -ātis, f. [auctor], counsel, advice, authority.
audācter, adv. [audãx], boldly.
audax, -ācis, adj. [audeō], daring, bold. (164.) Audacious.
audeō, 2, ausus [audãx], dare, be bold. (p. 177, note 2.)
audīō, 4, hear, listen. (223.) Audience.
augerō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum [ab(s)], bear off, carry away. (321.) Ablative.
augeō, 2, auxī, auxūntum, increase, enlarge.
aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum], of gold, golden.
auris, -is, f., ear.
aurum, -i, n., gold.
aut, conj., or; aut ... aut, either ... or. Cf. vel.
autem, conj. (never the first word), but, however, moreover. (393.)
autumnus, -i, m., autumn.
auxilium, -i, n. [angeō], help, aid, support; plur., auxiliaries.
avārus, -a, -um, adj., greedy, rapacious. Avārious.
avertō, 3, -tī, -sum, turn away from, avert.
avis, ĭs, v., bird. (154.)
avunculus, -i, m. [diminutive of avus], (maternal) uncle.
avus, -i, m., grandfather.
barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign, barbarous, barbarian.
beatos, -a, -um, adj. [beō, bless], blessed, happy. Beatitude.
Belgae, -ārum, m., the Belgae, a Gallic tribe.
bellō, 1 [bellum], war, carry on war. Cf. bellum gerō.
bellum, 5, n. [bellō], war. (36.)
bello, -a, -um, adj., pretty, charming, lovely.
bene, adv. [bonus], well.
beneficium, -i n. [bene, faciō], benefit, favor.
beneficiōsus, adj. [benignus], kindly.
benignus, -a, -um, adj. [bene, genus], (of good birth), kind, good. Benefiant.
bēstia, -ae, f., beast.
bibō, 3, bibi, potūm, drink. Imbibe.
bonum, -i, n. [bonus], good thing, blessing; plur., goods, possessions.
bonus, -a, -um, adj., comp. melior, superl. optimus; good. (71, 208.)
bōs, bovis, m. and r., ox, cow. (262.)
Bostonia, -ae, r., Boston.
brachium, -ī, n., arm.
brevīs, -e, adj., short, brief.
Britanni, -ōrum, m., the Britons.
Britannia, -ae, r., Britain.
Brūtus, -ī, m., Brūtus, a Roman surname.

C., abbreviation for Gājus.
cachīnō, 1, laugh aloud. Cf. ridicule.
cadō, 3, cecīdī, cāsum, fall.
caecus, -a, -um, adj., blind.
caedo, 3, cecīdī, caesum, cut, cut to pieces; kill.
caelum, -ī, n., sky, heaven.
caeruleus, -a, -um, adj. [for caelœlus, from caelum], dark-blue.
Caesar, (J.), -aris, m., Julius Caesār, c. famous Roman.
Cāius, -ī, m. See Gājus.
calathus, -ī, m., basket.
calcar, -āris, n. [calx, heel], spur. (149.)
callēns, -entis, adj. [P. of callō, be hard], hard, tough.
callidītās, -ātis, r. [callidus, cunning], shrewdness, cunning.
calor, -ōris, m. [caleō, be warm], heat, warmth. Caloric.
Campānia, -ae, r., Campania, a division of Italy.
candidus, -a, -um, adj. [candēo, shine], bright, fair, white. Candid. Cf. albus.
canis, -is, m. and r., dog. (153.) Canine.

Canna, -ārum, r., Canna, a village in Apulia.
Cannoensis, -e, adj. [Canna], of Canna.
Cantium, -ī, n., Kent (in Britain).
cantō, 1 [canō], sing. CHANT.
cantus, -ūs, m. [canō], singing, song. (278.) CHANT.
capillus, -ī, m., hair (of the head). Capillary.
capiō, 3, cēpī, captūm, take, seize (235); consilium capiō, adopt a plan. Capture.
captīvus, -ī, m. [capiō], captive, prisoner.
caput, -ūtis, n., head. (105.) Capital.
Carbō, -onis, m., Carbo, a Roman.
career, -cris, m., prison. Incarcerate.
carēō, 2, -uī, -itum, be without, want.
carmen, -inis, n., song, poem. (278.) Card, carnis, r., flesh.
carpō, 3, -eī, -tum, pluck.
carrus, -ī, m., wagon, cart. Car.
Carthagīnīensis, -e, adj. [Carthagō], of Carthage, Carthaginian.
Carthagō, -onis, r., Carthage, a town in Africa.
Carthagō Nova, a town in Spain.
cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, precious.
castra, -ūrum, n., camp.
cāsus, -ūs, m. [cado], a falling; mischance, misfortune, chance.
catellus, -ī, m. [diminutive of catulus], little dog, puppy.
Catilīna, -ae, m., Catiline, a famous Roman conspirator.
Catō, -onis, m., Cato, a celebrated Roman censor.
cauda, -ae, r., tail.
causa, -ae, r., cause, reason; causā (after a genitive), for the sake.
caveō, 2, cāvē, cantūm, beware, guard against.
cēdō, 3, cēssi, cēsum, go, depart, withdraw; grant.
celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift. (170.) Celerity.
celeriter, adv. [celer], swiftly.
cēlō, 1, conceal. Cf. abdō.
cēnseo, 2, -ui, -um, reckon; think, deem, be of opinion. Censure. (429.)
centum, num. adj., indecl., hundred. Cent.
Cērēs, -eris, f., Ceres, goddess of agriculture. Cereal.
certē, adv. [certus], certainly, surely, of course.
certō, 1, contend, strive, vie with.
certus, -a, -um, adj., fixed, determined, certain, sure; certiorum faciō, make (one) more certain, inform.
[cēterus], -a, -um, adj. (usually in plur.), the other, the rest.
cibus, -i, m., food. Cf. pābulum.
Ciceroō, -ōnis, m., Cicero, a famous Roman orator.
Cimbri, -ōrum, m., the Cimbri, a German tribe.
cingō, 3, cingxi, cinctum, bind, encircle, surround.
circiter, adv. [circus, circle], round about; about.
circum-dicō, 3, -duxi, -ductum, lead around.
circum-silīō, 4, -iī, -salīō, surround.
circum-veniō, 4, -venī, -ventum, surround; circumvent.
civīs, -is, m. and f., citizen. (154.)
civitas, -ātis, f. [civis], (body of citizens), state; citizenship. Cry.
clādēs, -is, f., destruction, defeat, disaster.
clāmitō, 1 [frequentative of clāmō], cry out, call out. Cf. exclāmō.
clāmor, -āris, m. [clāmō], shout, cry. Clamor.
clārus, -a, -um, adj., clear, renowned, famous; loud.
classis, -is, f., class of citizens; fleet. (154.)
cliēns, -entis, m., client. (163.)
coopē, coepisse (defective verb, tenses from pres. stem wanting), began.
coerceō, 2, -uī, -itum [co(m)], arceō, inclose, confine, check, restrain.
cōgnōscō, 3, -nōvī, -itum [com, (g)nōscō], learn, recognize, know. Cf. āgnōscō.
cogō, 3, -egi, -actum [com, agō], drive together, compel.
co-hortor, 1 [co(m), intensive], exhort, urge, encourage.
Collatinus, ī, m., Collatinus, surname of Lucius Tarquinius.
collēga (conl), -ae, m. [legō], (one who is chosen with another), colleague.
colligō (conl), 3, -legi, -lectum [com, legō], collect.
collis, -is, m., hill. (154.) Cf. mōns.
colloquium, -ī, n. [colloquor], conversation, colloquy.
colloquor, 3, -locūtus [com], speak together, converse.
colō, 3, colui, cultum, cultivate, till. Cf. inculta, agricola.
colōnia, -ae, f. [colōnus, husbandman, colō], colony.
color, -ōris, m., color.
columba, -ae, f., dove.
com (col, con, cor, co), primitive form of cum, a prefix denoting completeness or union; sometimes intensive.
comes, -itis, m. and f. [comitor (com, co)], comrade, companion.
comitor, 1 [comes], accompany, attend.

commicatus, -ús, m. [commecō, go to and fūro], passage, trip, expedition.

com-mittō, 2, -misi, -missum, (join together), commit; proelium committere, join battle, engage, begin fighting.

com-modus, -ā, -um, adj. (that has proper measure), convenient, suitable.

com-moror, 1, stay, linger, delay, remain.

com-moveō, 2, -mōvi, -mōtum, (put in violent motion), shake, disturb, agitate. Commotōx.

com-māniō, 4, (fortify strongly), secure, interrench.

com-periō, 4, -peri, -pertum, ascertain, learn, find out.

com-pleo, 2, -plevi, -plētum, fill out, fill up. Cf. implēō.

com-primo, 3, -pressī, -pressum [presumō], press together; check, suppress.

con-cutio, 3, -cussī, -cussum [com, quatiō], shake violently.

con-ferō, conferre, contuli, collātum (conīl), [com], bring together, collect; sē conferre, betake one's self. Confer.

con-ficio, 3, -feci, -fectum [com, faciō], make, accomplish, carry out.

con-fitor, 2, -fessus [com, fateor], confess.

con-fīgo, 3, -xi, -ctum [com], contend, fight. Conflict.

coniciō, 3, -iēi, -iectum [com, jacio], (throw together), throw, hurl.

conjunx, -jugis, m. and f. [com, junō, join], spouse, wife; husband.

coon, 1, attempt, try.

cōn-scendō, 3, -dī, -scēnsum, [com, scandō, cimb], ascend, embark; go on board.

cōn-sequor, 3, -cētus [com], follow close upon; follow.

cōn-sidō, 3, -sēdī, -sēssum [com], (sit together), encamp.

cōnsilium, -ī, n. [cōnsūlō, cōnsul], advice, counsel, prudence; plan, design.

cōn-similis, -e, adj., very similar, quite like.

conspicio, 3, -spexī, -spectum [com, speciō, loō], look at attentively; observe, see, behold.

conspicor, 1, [cōnspiciō], see at a glance, descry, catch sight of.

cōnstāns, -antis, adj., [P. of cōn-stō], firm, steady.

con-stat, 1, stītit, imper., it is evident, clear.

cōn-stītuō, 3, -isti, -stūtum [com, statuō], (place or put together), station, place; determine.

cōn-suēscō, 3, -sēvī, -suētum [com], become accustomed; in perf., be accustomed.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, r. [cōnsuētus], habit, custom.

cōnsul, -ulis, m. [cōnsulō, consult], consul. (134.)

cōnsulāris, -ēs, adj. [cōnsul], pertaining to a consul, consular; noun, ex-consul.

cōnsulātus, -ās, m. [cōnsul], office of consul, consulship.

con-sūmō, 3, -sūmpi, -sūptum [com], take up completely, consume.

cōn-tempnū, 3, -psī, -ptum [com], despise. Contemn.

contemplor, 1, look at, observe. Contemplate.
con-tendō, 3, -dī, -tum [com], (draw tight), exert one’s self; strive; hasten. Contend.
contentiō, -ōnis, r. [contendō], struggle, exertion, effort; contention.
contentus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of contineō], contented; w. abl.
con-testor, 1 [com, testis, witness], call to witness, invoke.
con-tīnēns, -entis, r. [P. of contineō, se. terra], continent.
con-tīnēcō, 2, -ī, -tentum [com, teneō], hold together, hold, contain.
contrā, prep. w. acc., against.
con-valēscō, 3, -valuī — [com, valeō], get well, grow strong. Concertescent. Cf. valeō.
con-veniō, 4, -venī, -ventum [com], come together, assemble.
con-verto, 3, -ī, -sum [com], turn around, turn, change. Convert.
cōpia, -ae, r. [com, ops], abundance, wealth; plur., troops, forces.
cor, corōsī, n., heart.
cōrām, prep. w. abl., in presence of.
Corinthius, -ī, r., Corinth. (11, 4.)
Coriolānus, -ī, m., Coriolanus, surname of C. Marcius, a Roman consul.
Cornēlia, -ae, r. Cornelia, mother of the Gracchi.
Cornēlius, -ī, m., Cornelius, a Roman family name.
cornū, -ūs, n., horn.
corpus, -orīs, n., body. (140.) Corpse.
corrigō, 3, -rēxi, -rectum [com, regō], make straight, reform, correct.
corripiō, 3, -uī, -reptum [com, rapiō], seize, take hold of.
cor-rumpō, 3, -rūpī, -ruptum, [com], break in pieces, destroy; corrupt, bribe.
cortex, -īcis, m. and r., bark, shell, rind.
cōrus, -ī, m., north-west (wind).
cotidiē, adv. [quot, diēs], daily.
crās, adv., to-morrow.
Crassus, -ī, m., Crassus, a rich Roman, contemporary of Caesar.
creātor, -ōris, m. [creō], creator.
crōber, -brum, adj., frequent, numerous.
crēdō, 3, -dī, -dītum, trust, believe; w. dat. Credit.
crēō, 1, make, create; choose, elect.
Croesus, -ī, m., Croesus, king of Lydia.
crūdēlis, -е, adj., cruel, hard-hearted.
crūdēlīter, adv. [crūdēlis], cruelly.
crucētus, -a, -um, adj. [cruor], stained with blood, bloody.
cruor, -ōris, m., blood, gore. Cf. sanguis.
crūs, crūris, n., leg.
culpa, -ae, r. [culpō], blame, fault. Culpable. Cf. vitium.
culpō, 1 [culpā], blame, find fault with.
culter, -trī, m., knife. Coulter.
cum, conj., when; since, as; though, although. (372 ff.)
cum, prep. w. abl., with.
Cumae, -ārum, r., Cumae, a town in Campania.
cūnae, -ārum, r., cradle.
cunctātiō, -ānis, r. [cunctor], delaying, delay.
cunctor, 1, linger, hesitate.
cupidītās, -ātis, r. [cupīdus, cupiō], desire, eagerness. Cupidity.
Cupīdō, -īnis, m. [cupīdus], Cupid, god of love.
cupīō, 3, -ivi, or -ī, -itum, desire, be eager for. Cf. désiderō.
cūr, adv. [quā, rē], why, wherefore.
cūra, -ae, f. [cūrō], care, anxiety.
cūrō, 1 [cūrā], care for, take care.
currō, 3, cucurrī, cursum, run.
currus, -ūs, m. [cūrō], chariot, car.
cursus, -ūs, m. [cūrō], a running, course.
curvus, -a, -um, adj., curved, bent; bending.
custōdiō, 4 [custōs], guard, protect, defend.
custōs, -ōdis, m. and f. [custōdiō], guardian, keeper. Custodian.
cymba, -ae, f. boat. Cf. nāvicaula.
Cyrus, -ī, m., Cyrus, king of Persia.

Daedalus, -ī, m., Daedalus, builder of the Labyrinth.
dannō, 1, condemn.
Dārēus, -ī, m., Darius, king of Persia.
Dātis, -īs, m., Datis, a Persian general.
dē, prep. w. abl., from, about, concerning, of; (of time), in, during, about.
dēa, -ae, f., goddess. (p. 8, note 1).
dēbēō, 2, -uī, -ētum, owe, ought. Debit, Debt.
decem, num. adj., indecl., ten.
December, -bris, m. [decem], December. Often as adj.
decem-plex, -īcis, adj. [plicō], tenfold.
dē-ecrēnō, 3, -crēvī, -crētum (separate from), decide, determine; decree.
dē-ecrēpō, 3, -sī, -tum [carpō], pluck off.
decet, 2, decuit, impers., it is becoming, fitting, proper.
decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [decem], tenth.
dē-dō, 3, -didi, -ditum (put from one’s self), surrender, deliver up.
dē-ducō, 3, -dūxi, -ductum, lead away, draw down, launch. Duct.
dē-fatigō, 1, tire out, exhaust.
dē-fendō, 3, -dī, -fēnsum [dēfensor], (strike off from), defend, protect.
dēfensor, -ōris, m. [dēfendō], defender, protector.
dē-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum (bring from), deliver; report.
dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj., tired out, weary.
dē-ficiō, 3, -feci, -fectum [ficiō], (make away from), revolt; fiēr, be wanting.
dē-formis, -e, adj. [forma], misshapen, ugly; base, disgraceful.
dē-inde, adv. (from thence), then, afterwards.
dē-electō, 1, delight.
dēlectus, -ās, m. [dēlegō], selection; levy.
dēleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum, destroy. Dele.
dēliciae, ārum, f., delight, darling.
dē-migrō, 1, migrate from; emigrate, remove.
Dēmosthenēs, -is, m., Demosthenes, a famous Athenian orator.
dēnique, adv., finally, at last.
dēns, ēntis, m., tooth. Dentist.
dē-percō, 4, -iī, ——, go to ruin, perish, be lost.
dē-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, put down, put by, lay down. Depone.
dē-scendō, 3, -dī, -scēnsum [scandō, climb], come down, descend.
dē-serō, 3, -uī, -tum, desert, abandon.
dēsiderō, 1, desire, long for, miss (319). Cf. optō, volō, and cupiō.
dē-siliō, 4, -siliū [saliō, leap],
leap down. Cf. subsiliō and tran-
siliō.
dē-sistō, 3, -stī, -stītum [stand off
or apart], leave off, cease; desist.
dē-spērō, 1 [spēs], be hopeless,
despair.
dē-sum, -esse, -suī, —, be want-
ing, lack; w. dat. Cf. déficiō.
dē-trahō, 3, -traxī, -tractum, draw
off; take away.
deus, -ī, m., god. (202.)
devorō, 1, swallow up, devour.
Diāna, -ae, f., Diana, goddess of
the chase.
dicō, 3, dixī, dictum, say, tell.
dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dicō],
chief magistrate, dictator.
dictūra, -ae, f. [dictātor], office
of dictator, dictatorship.
dictītō [frequentative of dicō],
keep saying.
dīēs, -ī, m. and r., day. (253.)
differō, differre, distuli, dilātum
[dis], scatter, separate, put off; differ. (321.)
difficilis, -e, adj. [dis, facilis], far
from easy], hard, difficult. (207.)
digitus, -ī, m., finger. Digit.
dignitās, -ātis, f. [dignus], worth,
dignity; office.
dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy.
diligēns, -entis, adj. [P. of diligō],
diligent, careful.
diligenter, adv. [diligēns], dili-
gently.
diligentia, -ae, f. [diligēns], dili-
gence, carefulness.
dī-ligō, 3, -lēxi, -lēctum [lēgō],
esteeze, love. (319.)
dīmicō, 1, fight, contend. Cf.
pāgniō.
dī-mīdīns, -a, -um, adj. [medīns],
half.
dī-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, send
away, let go.
dī-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum (move
asunder), separate, drive away.
dī-rūō, 3, dirūi, dirūtum, tear
asunder, destroy. Cf. rescindō.
dis, dī (a prefix denoting separa-
tion), asunder, apart, in different
directions. Cf. differō, discēdō,
dissimilis, dīmittō, dirūō.
Dis, Dītis, m., Dīs, another name
of Pluto.
dis-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, depart,
withdraw, go off.
discipulus, -ī, m. [discō], learner,
 scholar, pupil. Disciple.
discō, 3, didicī, —, learn.
dis-similis, -e, adj. (far from like),
unlike, dissimilar. (207.)
dīū, adv., for a long time, long.
dīves, -itis, adj. (comp. dītior,
superl. dīvitissimus), rich. (167.
3.)
divitiae, -ārum, r. [dives], riches,
wealth.
dō, dare, dedi, datum, give; put.
doceō, 2, -uī, -tum, teach, show.
doctus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of docēō],
learned. Doctor.
dolor, -ōris, m., pain, grief. Dol-
orous.
dolus, -ī, m., trick, deceit.
domicilium, -ī, n. [domus], home,
abode.
domina, -ae, r. [dominās], mistress.
dominor, 1 [dominās], be a lord
and master, rule. DOMINER.
dominus, -ī, m. [domina], lord,
master. (66.)
domus, -īs, r., house, home; domi,
at home. (262, 338.)
dōnō, 1 [dōnum], give, present.
Donate.
dōnum, -ī, n. [dō], gift, present.
dormiō, 4, sleep. Dormitory.
Drīsus, -i, m., Drusus, a Roman.
dubitō, 1 [dubius], hesitate, doubt.
Indubitable.
dubium, -i, n. [dubius], doubt.
dubius, -a, -um, adj. [doo], doubtful.
Dubious.
ducenti, -ae, -a, num. adj. [duo, centum], two hundred.
dūcō, 3, -diāxi, -ductum [dux], lead.
Duilius (C.), -i, m., Caius Duilius, a Roman general.
duleis, -e, adj., sweet, pleasant.
Dulcet. Cf. suavis.
dum, adv., while, as long as; until.
duo, duæ, duo, num. adj., two.
(311. 4.)
duo-decim, num. adj., indecl. [de-
cem], twelve.
duo-de-triginta, num. adj., indecl., twenty-eight.
dūrō, -a, -um, adj., hard. En-
dure. Cf. difficile.
dux, ducis, m. and f. [dūcō], leader, general. Duke. Cf. imperator.

ecce, interj., lo! see! see there!
ē-dicō, 3, -dixi, -dictum, speak out, declare, proclaim. Emit.
edō, edere or esse, dū, ēsum or ē-
sum, eat.
educō, 1, bring up, train, educate.
educa, duce, duco, -cum, lead out, bring away.
ec-ferō, efferre, extuli, ēlatum
[ex], bear out, bring forth. (321.)
Elate.
efficīo, 3, -feci, -fectum [ex, faciō], bring to pass, effect, complete; make, construct.
ēgens, -eundis, adj. [P. of egeō], in want, needy, destitute.
egō, pers. pron., I. (264.)
ē-gredior, 3, ēgressus [gradior,
step], go out, go forth; disembark, land. Cf. excō.
egregiē, adv. [ēgregius], remark-
ably, excellently.
ē-gregius, -a, -um, adj. [grex], re-
markable, excellent. Egregious.
eglegōn, -antis, adj., choice, elegant.
elephantus, -i, m., elephant.
e-lūdō, 3, -si, -sum, deceive, mock; elude.
ē-mergō, 3, -si, -sum, arise, come forth; emerge.
ēmō, 3, ēmi, emptum, buy, purchase.
ēnim, conj. (never the first word),
for. Cf. nam.
Ennius, -i, m., Ennius, father of
Roman poetry.
ē-nūntiō, 1, say out, divulge, declare, report. Enunciate.
ē, see ex.
ee, adv. [is], to that place, thither, there.
eeō, ire, ēti, itum, go. (327.)
eōdem, adv. [īdem], to the same
place.
ē-πūris, -i, n., Epirus, a division of
Greece.
epistula, -ae, r., letter, epistle.
eques, -itis, m. [equus], horseman, knight.
equester, -tris, -tre, adj., [eques],
(pertaining to a horseman), equest-
rian.
equītātus, -ās, m. [equitātus, eques],
(body of equites), cavalry.
equītō, 1 [eques], (be a horseman),
ride.
equus, -i, m., horse.
ērgō, adv., therefore, accordingly.
Cf. igitur and itaque.
ē-ripiō, 3, -ui, -reptum [rapio],
snatch out, seize and bear off.
errō, 1, wander; err, mistake.
ē-rudiō, 4. [rudis, rough], train, teach, instruct.

esse dum, -i, n., two-wheeled war-chariot.

et, conj., and; et . . . et, both . . . and. Cf. atque, āc, and -que.
etiam, adv. and conj. [et, jam, and now], also, even.
et-sī, conj., though, although.

Europā, -ae, f., Europe.

e-vādō, 3, -vāsi, -vāsum, go forth, escape. Evade.


ē-vertō, 3, -tī, -sum, overturn, over-throw, destroy.

e-volō, 1, fly away.
ex or ē, prep. w. abl., out of, from.
exāminō, 1 [exāmen, test], weigh out, weigh.

excelsus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of excellō], elevated, lofty, high.

ex-cipio, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [expiō], take out, except; receive, welcome.

ex-clāmō, 1, cry out, exclaim. Cf. clāmiō,
ex-cūsō, 1 [causa], excuse.

ex-cutīō, 3, -cussī, -cussum [qua-tiō], shake out, strike off, drive away, cast out.

ex-eō, -ère, -ēi, -itum, go out, come out. Exit. Cf. ēgrodiōr.

ex-erceō, 2 [arcō], keep busy, employ; train. Exercise.

exercitus, -īs, m. [exercēō], (the thing trained), army.

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., scanty, small, slight.

expeditīō, -onis, f. [expediō], excursion, expedition.

ex-pellō, 3, -puli, -pulsum, drive out or away, expel.


ex-plecō, 1, -āvi, -ātum, and -ūi, -itum, unfold, explain.

explērātor, -ōris, m. [explērō], a searcher out, explorer; spy, scout.

ex-plūrō, 1, search out, examine, explore; reconnoitre.

ex-pōnō, 3, -posui, -positum, put or set out, expose; draw up, marshal.

ex-pūgnō, 1, take by storm, assault.

Cf. oppūgnō.

ex-sistō, 3, -stūi, -stitum (stand forth), exist, appear.

ex-spectō, 1, await, wait for, expect.

ex-spīrō, 1, breath out, breath one’s last, expire.

ex-stinguō, 3, -nūxī, -nētum (quench completely), extinguish; kill, destroy.

ex-terreō, 2, -ūi, -itum, frighten, affright.

ex-timēscō, 3, -timui, — [timēs], fear greatly.

extrā, prep. w. acc., without, outside of. Cf. intrā.

ex-turbō, 1, thrust out, drive away.

faber, -brī, m., worker, carpenter. Fabric.

Fabius, -ī, m., Fabius, a famous Roman general.

Fabricius, -ī, m., Fabricius, a famous Roman general.

fābula, -ae, f. [for, speak], story, tale, fable.

facillīs, -e, adj. [faciō], (that can be done), easy to do, easy. Facility.

facinus, -onis, n. [faciō], (the thing done), deed; crime. Cf. scelus.

faciō, 3, feci, factum, do, make.
fāgus, -i, r., beech-tree. (11. 4.)
Falisci, -orum, m., the Faliscans, a people of Etruria.
falsō, adv. [falsus], falsely.
falsus, -a, -um, adj. [fallō, deceive], deceptive, false.
fāma, -ae, f. [for, speak], rumor; fame, renown.
famēs, -is, r., hunger, famine.
fās, n., indecl. [for, speak], divine law; often translated as adj., right, lawful.
fascis, -is, m., bundle.
fatigō, 1, tire out, weary. Fatigue.
fātum, -i, n. [for, speak], (that which is spoken), fate, destiny.
favēō, 2, favō, futum, be favorable to, favor, befriend; w. dat.
febrīs, -is, f. [ferveō, be hot], fever.
Februārius, -ī, m., February. Often as adj.
fecliciter, adv. [fēlix], luckily, fortunately.
félix, -cis, adj., lucky, fortunate.
fera, -ae, f. [ferus], wild animal, wild beast.
ferē, adv., nearly, for the most part, almost, about. Cf. paene.
ferō, ferre, tuli, lūtum, bear, bring; ferunt, they say. (321.) Cf. portā and velō.
ferōx, -ōcis, adj. [ferus], fierce, inpetuous.
ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum], of iron, iron.
ferrum, -ī, n., iron.
ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, savage, cruel.
fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs], trusty, faithful. Cf. fidus.
fidēliter, adv. [fidēlis], faithfully.
fidēs, -ēs, -ēi, f. [fidō, trust], trust, faith.
fidus, -a, -um, adj. [fidō, trust], trusty, faithful.

filia, -ae, f., daughter. (p. 8, note 1).
Cf. nāta.
filiolus, -ī, m., diminutive of filius, little son.
filius, -ī, m., son. (79.) Fīliāl.
finīō, -ā, f. [finis], end, finish. Finite.
finis, -is, m., end, boundary. (154.)
finītīmus, -a, -um, adj. [finis], bordering on, neighboring.
fitō, fieri, factus (supplies pass. to faciō), be made, become. (327.)
firmō, 1 [firmus], make strong.
firmus, -a, -um, adj. [firmō], steadfast, strong. Firm.
flagrō, 1, burn.
flectō, 3, -xi, -xum, bend, turn.
flectō, 2, flēvi, flēlatum, weep, cry.
flō, 1, blow.
flōs, floris, m., flower. Floral.
flūmen, -inis, n. [flūō], (that which flows), river, stream. (172.)
flūō, 3, flūxi, flūxum, flow.
fluvius, -ī, m. [flūō], (the flowing thing), river, stream. (172.)
follum, -ī, n., leaf. Foliage.
fōns, fontis, m., spring, fount, fountain.
fors, fori, m., for future esse.
formidō, -inis, r., fear, terror.
forte, adv. [fors, chance], perchance, perhaps, possibly.
fortis, -e, adj., strong, brave, courageous.
fortiter, adv. [fortis], bravely, courageously.
fortitūdō, -inis, f. [fortis], strength, bravery, endurance, fortitude.
fortūna, -ae, f. [fors, chance], fortune.
forum, -ī, n., market-place; forum.
frangō, 3, frāgī, fractum, dash in pieces, break. Fraction.
frāter, -tris, m., brother. Frater.

---
frētus, -a, -um, adj., relying on, trusting to; w. abl.
frigidus, -a, -um, adj. [frīgeō, freeze], cold, frigid.
frondōsus, -a, -um, adj. [frōns], covered with leaves, leafy.
frōns, frondis, f., leaf, foliage; garden of leaves.
frōns, -tis, f., brow, forehead, Front.
frūctus, -ūs, m. [fruor], fruit. Cf. frumentum.
frumentārius, -a, -um, adj. [frumentum], pertaining to grain; rés frumentaria, grain-supply.
frumentum, -ī, n. [fruor], corn, grain. Cf. fructus.
fruor, 3, fruētus, enjoy; w. abl. (304.)
frustrā, adv., in vain.
(frūx), frūgis, f. (oftener plur.; gen. frūgum), [fruor], fruit of the earth, fruits. Cf. fructus.
fugā, -ae, f. [fugiō, flee], flight.
fugīō, 3, fugī, — [fugō, fuga], run away. Fugitive.
fugō, 1 [fugiō, fuga], put to flight, chase, drive.
fungor, 3, fungētus, perform, discharge; w. abl. (304.) Function.

Gāius, gen. Gāī (also written Cāius), m., Caius, a Roman first name.
Galba, -ae, m., Galba.
Galilia, -ae, f., Gaul.
Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. [Gallus], belonging to the Gauls, Gallic.
gallina, -ae, f. [gallus, cock], hen.
Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul.
gaudēō, 2, gāvisus [gaudium], be glad, rejoice. (p. 177, note 2.)

Gaudium, -i, n. [gaudeō], joy, delight.
Genere, -ēri, m., son-in-law.
Gēns, genitīs, f., clan, family. Gender.
Gēnum, -ēs, n., knee. (245.)
Genus, -eris, n., birth, race; kind, nature. Gender.
Germānus, -a, -um, adj., German; noun, a German.
Gerō, 3, gessī, gestum, bear, carry; wage, manage, do.
Gliadiator, -ātor, m. [gladius], (swordsmen), gladiator.
Gladius, -ī, m., sword.
Gloria, -ae, f., glory, fame, renown.
Gracilis, -e, adj., slender. (207.)
Gradus, -ūs, m., step. (245.) Grade.
Graecē, adv. [Graecus], in Greek.
Graecia, -ae, f., Greece.
Graecus, -a, -um, adj., Grecian, Greek; noun, a Greek.
Grāmen, -inis, n., grass.
Grānum, -ī, n., grain, seed.
Grātulor, 1 [grātus], congratulate; w. dat.
Grātus, -ā, -um, adj., acceptable, pleasing. Grateful.
Gravis, -e, adj., heavy, serious. Grave.

Graver, adv. [gravis], heavily, seriously.
Gremium, -ī, n., lap, bosom.
Grex, gregis, m., flock, herd.
Gustō, 1, taste, eat.

Habeō, 2, have, hold.
Habitō, 1 [frequentative of habeō], inhabit; dwell, live. (194.)
Hannibal, -alis, m., Hannibal, a famous Carthaginian general.
Hasdrubal, -alis, m., Hasdrubal, a Carthaginian general, brother of Hannibal.
hasta, -ae, f., spear.
haeriuō, 4, hausī, haustum, draw (water), drain. Exhaust.
Hector, -oris, m., Hector, chief of the Trojan warriors.
Henna, -ae, f., Henna, a city of Sicily.
heri, adv., yesterday.
hīc, haece, hōc, dem. pron., this, this of mine; abl., hōc, on this account; as pers. pron., he, she, it. (275.)
hiem(hiemps), hiemis, f., winter; storm.
hinc, adv. [hīc], from this place, hence.
Hispānia, -ae, f., Spain.
Hispānus, -ī, m., a Spaniard.
histōria, -ae, f., history.
hodiē, adv. [hōc, dīē], to-day.
Homērus, -ī, m., Homer, the earliest and greatest Greek poet.
homo, -inis, m. and f. (human being), man. (138.)
honestās, -ātis, f. [honestus], honor, integrity, honesty.
honōriūcē, adv., honorably.
honor, -ōris, m., honor.
honōrō, 1 [honor], honor, respect.
hōra, -ae, f., hour.
Horātius, -ī, m., Horatius, Horace.
horrīdus, -a, -um, adj. [horreō, shudder at], frightful, rough, wild.
Horrīdus.
hortor, 1, urge, exhort, encourage.
hortus, -ī, m., garden. (38.)
hospes, -ītis, m. and f., host, guest, guest-friend. Hospital.
hostis, -īs, m. and f., enemy. (149, 172.) Hostile.
hūc, adv. [for old form hōc], to this place, hither.
hūmānus, -a, -um, adj. [homo], human; cultivated, refined.
humilis, -e, adj. [humus, ground], (pertaining to humus), low, lowly, humble, poor. (207.)
ibi, adv. [is], in that place, there.
ident, eadem, idem, determin. pron. [is], same. (270.)
idōneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, proper.
Īdūs, -um, f., plur., the Iūdēs (of the month). The thirteenth, except in March, May, July, and October; in those months the fifteenth. (244. 1.)
igitur, conj. (seldom the first word), therefore, then. Cf. ergō and itaque.
ignāvia, -ae, f. [ignāvus], laziness, idleness, cowardice.
ignāvus, -a, -um, adj. [in, not, gnāvus, busī], lazy, idle, cowardly.
ignis, -is, m., fire. (149.)
ignōrō, 1 [ignārus, ignorare], not know, be ignorant of.
ille, -a, -ud, demon. pron., that (yonder); as pers. pron., he, she, it. (275.)
ilīc, adv. [ille], to that place, thither, there.
imāgō, -inis, f., image, likeness, picture. (134.)
imitor, 1, imitate.
immānis, -e, adj., huge, immense, monstrous. Cf. mānuis.
impēdiō, 4 [in, pēs], (entangle the feet), impēde, hinder, prevent.
im-pellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsam [in], urge on, impel, prompt.
imperator, -ōris, m. [imperō], commander, general. Emperor.
imperium, -ī, n. [imperō], command, authority, power. Empire.
impero, 1 [imperium], order, command; w. dat.
impertrœ, 1, accomplish; gain, procure, obtain. Cf. adipiscor.
impetus-, -is, m. [impeto, rush upon], attack, onset. IMPETUOUS.
impleô, 2, -evi, -ētum [in], fill up, fill full, fill. Cf. compleō.
implorō, 1 [in], cry out to, beseech, implore.
imponē, 3, -posuī, -positum [in], put or place upon.
improbus, -a, -um, adj. [in, not, probus, good], bad, wicked. Cf. malus.
imprōvisō, adv. [videō], unexpectedly.
impudēns, -entis, adj. [in], shameless, impudent.
in, prep. w. acc. into, to, against, for; w. abl., in, on. (333, 1, 2.)
in, prefix, in composition with nouns, adjectives, and participles, often having negative sense. Cf. Eng. UN-, IN-, not.
ināuis, -e, adj., empty, useless.
incautus, -a, -um, adj., incautious, heedless.
incertus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain.
incidō, 3, -cidi, -cāsum [cadō], fall into; happen, befall. Cf. accidō and eveniō.
inciπō, 3, -cēπī, -ceptum [capiō], (take in hand), begin. Cf. doriō.
incognitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown.
icola, -ae, m. and r. [incolō], inhabitant.
icolō, 3, -uī, -ātum [incola], dwell in, inhabit, live, dwell. Cf. habitō and vivō.
icolumnis, -e, adj., unharmed, safe.
indec, adv. [i], thence.
indicium, -i, n., discovery, disclosure.
in-eō, -ēre, -iī, -itum, go in, enter; begin. (327.)
inferi, -ērum, m. (inferus, below), inhabitants of the lower world, the dead. INFERNAL.
in-ferō, inferre, intulī, illātum (inf) (bear in or against), cause; bellum inferre, make war upon; w. dat. (321.)
infestus, -a, -um, adj., hostile, troublesome, dangerous. INFEST.
in-ficiō, 3, -feci, -fectum [faciō], stain, color.
in-finitus, -a, -um, adj. [finis], boundless, unlimited, infinite, vast.
in-flectō, 3, -xi̯, -xum, bend; change, alter. INFLECT.
in-gredior, 3, -gressus [gradior, step], enter.
in-hiō, 1, gape at, long for.
in-imicus, -a, -um, adj. [amicus], unfriendly, hostile; noun, enemy. (172.) INIMICAL.
inītium, -i, n. [ino], beginning. INITIAL.
injiōria, -ae, r. [in, ius], injustice, injury, wrong.
injūstē, adv. [iustus], unjustly.
inopia, -ae, r. [inops, without resources], want, poverty.
inquam, defective verb, say: inquire (placed after one or more quoted words), said he.
institūō, 3, -uī, -ātum [statuō, place], fix, determine, undertake. INSTITUTE.
instruēctus, -a, -um [P. of instruō], furnished, equipped.
instruō, 3, -struī, -strūctum [struō, build], build up, form, INSTRUCT, teach.
insula, -ae, r., island. PENINSULA.
in-sum, -esse, -suī, —, be in, among; w. dat. and in w. abl.
intel-legō, 3, -lēxi, -lēctum [inter], see into; understand. Intellect.
inter, prep. w. acc., between, among, amid.
inter-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, perish.
inter-dum, adv., sometimes.
inter-ficiō, 3, -fici, -fectum [fac-
ciō], kill, put to death. Cf. necō and occiō.
interior, -us, adj. [no positive], inner, interior.
inter-pellō, 1, interrupt; entreat, importune.
inter rogō, 1, ask, inquire, question. (382.) Interrogation.
inter-sum, -esse, -suī, ——, be present at or among; w. dat. Cf. ad-
sum.
intrī, prep. w. acc., within. Cf. extra.
in-tuecor, 2, look towards, at, or upon.
Intuition.
intus, adv. [in], within, inside.
in-veniō, 4, -venī, -venium, come upon, find, meet with, discover.
Invent. Cf. reperiō.
in-vicem, adv., by turns, in turn, alternately.
in-victus, -a, -um, adj., unconquer-
able, invincible.
invitō, 1, invite.
invitus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling, re-
luctant.
in-vocō, 1, call upon, invoke.
īō, interj., ah! oh!
ipse, -a, -um, intens. pron., self, very. (270.)
ira, -ae, f., anger, wrath; ire.
irrīrideō, 2, -risi, -risum [in], laugh at, ridicule; jest, mock.
is, ea, id, determin. pron., that: as pers. pron., he, she, it. (270)
iste, -a, -ud, demonstr. pron., that (of yours). (275.)

ita, adv., so, thus. Cf. sic.
italia, -ae, f., Italy.
Italus, -a, -um, adj., Italian.
ita-que, conj., and so, therefore. Cf. ergō and igitur.
item, adv. [ita], likewise, also.
item.
iter, itineris, n. [eō], way, road, march. (262.) Iterant.
iterum, adv., a second time, again.
Iteration.
Ithaca, -ae, v., Ithaca, an island in the Ionian Sea.
Ithius, m., Ithius, a port in Gaul.

jaccō, 2, -uī, —— [jaciō]; (be thrown), lie.
jaciō, 3, jēci, jactum [jaccō], throw, cast, hurl, fling.
jam, adv., already, now, at last. Cf. nune.
jamjum, adv., already; jamjam ventūrus, on the point of coming.
jānua, -ae, f. [Jānus], door. Cf. porta.
Jānus, -i, m. [jānua], Janus, the two-faced god.
jējūnium, -i, n. [jējūnus], fast, hunger.
jējūnus, -a, -um [jejūnium], fasting, hungry, without food.
jocus, -i, m. (plur. jocī and joca), joke, jest; per jocum, in jest, for a joke.
Jōhannicus, -i, m., little John, Johnny, Jack.
jubeō, 2, jussī, jussum, bid, order, command. Cf. imperō.
jūcundus, -a, -um, adj., pleasant, agreeable.
jūdex, -icis, m. [jūdicus], judge.
(106.)
jūdicium, -i, n. [jūdicō], judg-
ment, opinion.
jūdicō, 1 [jūdēx], judge. (426.)
Jūlius, -i, m., Julius, a Roman family name.
Jūpīter, Jovis, m., Jupiter, the supreme deity of the Romans. (262.)
jūrō, 1 [jūs], swear, take an oath.
jūs, juris, n., right, justice. (140.)
Cf. fās.
jūssus, -ūs, m. [jūbēō], command, order.
jūstē, adv. [jūstus], rightly, justly.
juvenis, -is, m. and f., youth, young person. Cf. adulēscēns.
juvēntūs, -ūtis, f. [juvenis], the season of youth; youth.

Labiēnus, -i, m., Labienus, a lieutenant of Caesar's.
labor, m., -ōris, labor.
laborō, 1 [laborā], work, toil.
labrum, -i, n., lip.
lac, lactis, n., milk. LACTEAL.
Lacedaemonii, -ōrum, m., the Lacedaemonians.
lacrīma, -ae, f., tear. LACRIMOSE.
lacūs, -ūs, m., lake, pond.
Laevinus, -i, m., Laevinus, a Roman consul.
lapis, -idis, m., stone. LAPIDARY.
Latinē, adv. [Latinus], in Latin.
Latinus, -a, -um, adj. [Latium], Latin; noun, a Latin.
lātrō, 1, bark, bark at.
latrō, -ōnis, m., robber.
lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide. LATITUDE.
latus, -ūs, n., side. LATERAL.
laudō, 1 [laus], praise, laud.
lauis, laudis, f. [laudō], praise, glory, fame.
lēgātus, -i, m. [lēgō, depute], ambassador, lieutenant. LEGATE.
lēgō, -onis, f. [lēgō], (a gathering), legion.
lúctus, -ūs, m. [lūgeō], mourning, lamentation.
lúcus, -i, m. [lūceō, shine], (open place in a wood), wood, grove.
lūdō, 3, lūsi, lūsum [lūdus], play.
Interlude.
lūdus, -i, m. [lūdō], game, play.
lūgeō, 2, lūxi, ——, mourn, lament.
lūmen, -inis, n. [lūceō, lūx], light.
Luminous.
lūna, -ae, f. [lūceō, lūx], moon.
Luna.
lupus, -i, m., wolf.
luscinia, -ae, f., nightingale.
lūx, lūcis, f. [lūceō, shine], light, daylight.

M., abbreviation of Marcus, a Roman first name.
macte, adj. [voc. of mactus], be honored, be blessed; hail! well done! (p. 178, note 3.)
maculō, 1, stain.
magis, adv. [māg(nus)], more.
magister, -trī, m. [māg(nus)], master, teacher. Cf. praecceptor.
magistrātus, -ūs, m. [magister], (the office of a magister), magistracy, magistrate.
māgnum, a, -um, adj. [māgnus, faciō], splendid, magnificent.
māgnitūdō, -inis, r. [māgnus], greatness, size, magnitude.
māgnus, a, -um, adj. (comp. mājor, superl. māximus), great, large.
mājor, -us, comp. of māgnus, Major.
male, adv. [mālus], badly, ill. (210.)
mālō, mālē, māluī, —— [māgis, volō], be more willing, prefer, would rather. (316.)
mālum, -ī, n., bad thing, evil.
mālum, -ī, n., apple.
malus, -a, -um, adj. (comp. pējor sup. pessimus), bad, evil; baleful. (208.) Cf. improbus.
māne, adv., in the morning.
mancō, 2, mānsī, mānum, stay, remain, await.
mānēs, -iūm, m., departed spirits, souls.
Manlius, -ī, m., Manlius, a Roman.
manus, -ūs, f., hand; force, band. (244, 1.) Manual.
Mārcellus, -ī, m., Mārcellus, a Roman general.
mare, -is, n., sea. (149.) Marine.
maritimus, -a, -um, adj. [mārē], belonging to the sea, bordering on the sea, maritime.
Mārius (C.), -ī, m., Cājus Mārius, a famous Roman general.
Mārtius, -ī, m. [Mārs], March. Often as adj.
massa, -ae, f., mass.
māter, -trīs, f., mother. Maternal.
māteria, -ae, f. [māter], (mother-stuff), materia, timber.
mātrōna, -ae, f. [māter], matron, wife, lady.
mātūrō, 1 [mātūrns, ripe], hasten.
māximē, adv. [māximus], most, especially, greatly. (219.)
māximus, -a, -um, superl. of māgnus. (208.)
medicus, -ī, m. [medeō, cure], physician. Medicine.
mediterrāneus, -a, -um, adj. [medius, terra], midland, inland. Mediterranean.
medius, -a, -um, adj., middle; often to be translated midst.
Meldi, -ōrum, m., the Meldi, a people of Gaul.
melior, -ius, comp. of bonus. (208.)
mellitus, -a, -um, adj. [mel, honey], honey-sweet, darling.
memor, -oris, adj., mindful. (150.) Memorabile.
memoria, -ae, f. [memor], memory.
memorācium, -i, n. [memāx], lying, falsehood.
mendāx, -ācis, adj., [mentio], lying, deceitful.
mēns, meatīs, f., mind, purpose. (273.) Mental.
mēnsa, -ae, f., table.
mēnsis, -is, m., month.
mentor, 4 [mendāx], lie, deceive.
Mercurius, -i, m., Mercury, messenger of the gods. (79.)
mercō, 2, be worthy of, deserve, merit.
meridīanus, -a, -um, adj. [meridīes], of or belonging to midday, noon; meridian.
Mētellus, -i, m., Metellus, a Roman general.
metuō, 3, -ui, -ütum [metus], fear.
Cf. timeō.
metus, -i, m. [metuō], fear, dread.
Cf. timor.
meus, -a, -um, poss. pron. (voc. sing. mas. mi), my, mine.
migrō, 1, migrate.
mīles, -itis, m., soldier. (195.) Military.
mīlle, num. adj., indecl. in sing.; in plur. mūlia, -iūm, thousand. (311, 6.)
Mittāides, -is, m., Mittāides, a Greek general.
Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, goddess of wisdom.
minimē, adv. [minimus], least; no, by no means, far from it.
minister, -tri, m. [minus], (an inferior), servant. (96.) Minister.
Cf. magister.
minor, 1 [minae, threats], threaten.
minor, -us, comp. of parvus.
minus, adv. [minor], less.
mirābilis, -e, adj. [miror, wonder at], to be wondered at; wonderful, extraordinary.
misellus, -a, -um, adj. [diminutive of miser], poor little.
miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, unhappy, miserable.
miseret, 2, ītum est, impers. [miser], it makes miserable, it excites pity, (one) pities; nos miseret, ve pity. (415.)
miseria, -ae, f. [miser], wretchedness, misery.
Mithridatēs, -is, m., Mithridates, king of Pontus.
mittō, 3, mīsī, missum, send. Mission.
modestia, -ae, f. [modestus], modesty.
modius, -i, m. [modus], measure; peck.
modo, adv. [modus], only; modo ... modo, now ... now.
 molestus, -a, -um, adj. [molēs, pile], troublesome. Molest.
mollīō, 4 [mollis], soften. Mollify.
moneō, 2, -uī, -itum, remind, advise, warn. Monitor. (112.)
mōns, montis, m., mountain, hill.
Cf. collis.
mōnstrō, 1 [moneō], show, point out. Demonstrate.
monumentum, -i, n. [moneō], (that which reminds), memorial, monument.
mora, -ae, f., delay.
Morini, -orum, m., the Morini, a people of Gaul.
morior, 3, mortuus [mors], (fut. parti. moriturus), die.
mörōsus, -a, -um, adj. [mōs], fretful, cross; morose.

mortālis, -e, adj. [mors], (liable to death), mortal.

mortus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of morior], dead.

mors, mortis, r. [moriōr], death.

mōs, mōris, m., manner, habit, custom. (140.) Moral.

mōtus, -ūs, m. [mōvēō], motion, movement; tumult, disturbance.

mōvēō, 2, mōvī, mōtum, mōve.

mōx, adv., soon, presently.

mulier, -eris, v., woman.

multītūdō, -inis, r. [multus], multitude.

multus, adv. [multus], much.

multus, -a, -um, adj., comp. plūs, superl. plūrimus, much, many.

mundus, -ī, m., world, universe. Cf. orbis terrarum.

mūniō, 4 [moenia, fortifications], fortify, defend.

mūnītiō, -onis, r. [mūniō], fortification. Munition.

mūrus, ī, m., wall.

mūtō, 1, change, alter. Mutation.

nām, conj., for. Cf. enim.

nanciscor, 3, nactus and nactus, get, obtain; find, meet with.

nārro, 1, tell, relate, report, narrate.

nāscor, 3, nātus, be born; be found.

Nāsica, -ae, m., Nasica, surname of one of the Scipios.

nāta, -ae, r. [P. of nāscor], daughter. Cf. filia.

nātūra, -ae, r. [nāscor], nature.

nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvita; nāvis], sailor.

nāvicula, -ae, r. [diminutive of nāvis], little vessel, boat. Cf. cymba.

navigātiō, -onis, r. [navigō], a sailing; navigation.

navigō, 1 [nāvis, agō], sail, set sail.

nāvis, -is, r., ship. (154.) Naval.

nē, conj., that not, lest; w. hortatory subjunctive, not.

ne, interrog. adv., enclitic. (p. 10, x. 2.) Cf. nōmine and num.

necessārius, -a, -um, adj. [necessus], necessary.

necessitās, -ātis, r. [necessus], necessity, constraint.

necō, 1, kill, slay. Cf. interficiō and occīdō.

nectō, 3, nexus and nēxī, nēxum, bind, weave.

negō, 1 [nē, aīō, say], say not, deny; refuse.

nēmō, -inis, m. and r. [nē, homo], no one. For gen. and abl. use nūllius, nūllo.

Neptūnus, -ī, m., Neptune, god of the sea.

nē-quāquam, adv., by no means, not at all.

nec-que or nēc, and not; neque ... neque, neither ... nor.

ne-scīō, 4, know not, be ignorant of.

neuter, -tra, -trum, adj., neither (of two). (200.) Neutral.

niger, -gra, -grum, adj., black. Cf. āter.

nihil, x., indecl., nothing.

nimium, adv., too, too much.

nisi, conj., if not, unless, except.

nix, nīvis, r., snow. (107, 2.)

nōbilis, -e, adj. [nōscō], well-known, famous; noble.

nocēō, 2, -uī, -itum, do harm to, hurt, injure; w. dat. Noxious. Cf. obsum.

noctū, adv. [mōx], by night, in the night.
nölö, nölle, nölui, —, [nē, volō], be unwilling, will not, not wish. (316.)
nömēn, -inis, n. [nōscō], (that by which a thing is known), name. Nominal. (134.)
nömīnō, 1 [nömēn], name, call.
nōn, adv. [nē, ēnum], not.
nōn-ne, interrog. adv., expecting an affirmative answer, not? Cf. -ne and num.
nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, adj. (not none), some.
nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj. [novēm], ninth.
nōscō, 3, nōvi, nōtum, learn, know. P. nōtus, -a, -um, as adj. known.
nōster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., our, ours. Nōstri, our men.
novus, -a, -um, adj., new. Novelty.
nox, noctis, f., night. (107. 2.) Nocturnal.
nūbēs, -is, f., cloud. (149.)
nūllus, -a, -um, adj. [nē, ullus], not any, no, none. (200.) Nul-

nūm, interrog. adv., expecting a negative answer, whether. Cf. nonne and -ne.
Numa, -ae, m., Numa (Pompilius), second king of Rome.
numerus, -ī, m., number.
nūmmus, -i, m., piece of money, coin.
nunc, adv., now. Cf. jam.
nunquam, adv. [nē, unquam], never.
nūntiō, 1 [nūntius], announce, report.
nūntius, -ī, m. [nūntiō], bearer of news, messenger.
nūsquam, adv. [nē, usquam], nowhere.
nūtriō, 4, feed, nourish, support. Cf. alō.
ō, interj., O, Oh! ob-eō, -irc, -īi, -itum, go to, reach, meet.
ob-ligō, 1 [ligō, bind], bind, oblige, put under obligation.
obliviscor, 3, oblivus, forget.
ob-rūō, 3, -ūi, -utum, overwhelm, cover, bury.
obses, -sidēs, m. and f. [ob, sēdecō], (one who sits or remains as a pledge), hostage.
obsidēs, 2, -sēdi, -sēssum [sēdecō], (sit against), blockade, besiege. Cf. oppūgnō.
ob-sistō, 3, -stīi, -stītum, oppose, withstand, obstruct; w. dat.
ob-sum, -esse, -fui, —, be against, opposed t; injure; w. dat. Cf. nocēō.
ob-temporē, 1, comply with, yield to; w. dat.
ob-viam, adv., in the way, towards; with verb of motion, meet; w. dat.
occāsus, -ās, m. [occīdō], (a sinking), setting.
occīdō, 3, -cīdi, -cāsum [ob, cadō], fall down, fall.
occīdō, 3, -cīdi, -cāsum [ob, caedō, cut], cut down, kill. Cf. necō and interficiō.
occupō, 1 [ob, capiō], take possession of, seize; occupy. Cf. potior.
occūrrō, 3, -currī, -currum [ob], run to meet; meet, fall in with. Occur.
ōceanus, -ī, m., ocean.
occīlūs, -ī, m. [diminutive of ocu-
little eye.
occīvus, -a, -um, num. adj. [octō], eight.
occō, num. adj., indecl., eight.
oculus, -i, m., eye. Ocular.
of-ferō, offere, obtuli, oblātum [ob], (bring before), present, offer. (321.)
officium, -i, n. [opus, faciō], service, duty, office.
ōlim, adv. [olle, old form of ille], (at that time); formerly, once; at some time or other; henceforth. Cf. aliquando and quondam.
omnis, -e, adj., whole, all, every. Cf. totus.
onus, -eris, n., load, burden. Oxenous.
operā, -ae, f. [opus], labor, care, attention; operam dare, try; operā, on account of. Operate.
opportet, 2, -uit, imper. [opus], it is necessary, it behooves; (one) must or ought.
oppiānus, -a, -um, adj. [oppidum], of a town; noun, townsman.
oppidum, -i, n., town.
op-pleō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum [ob], fill up; cover.
opportunus, -a, -um, adj., fit, convenient; opportune.
op-pūgnō, 1 [ob], attack, assault, besiege. Cf. expugnō and obscureō. [ops], opis, F., aid, assistance; plur., power, strength, resources.
opthinē, adv. [optimus], most excellently, best. (219.)
ōptō, 1, wish, desire, long for. Cf. cupiō and désiderō.
opus, -eris, n., work, labor (140); as indecl. noun, need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary.
ōrāculum, -i, n. [ōrō], oracle.
ōrātiō, -onis, f. [ōrō], prayer, plea; speech, oration.
ōrātor, -ōris, m. [ōrō], orator, ambassador.
orbis, -is, m., circle, orb; orbis ter-
rārum, earth, world. (154.)
orbus, -a, -um, adj., bereaved, childless.
Orcus, -i, m., Orcus, the lower world; also Pluto, the god of the lower world.
ordior, 4, orsus, begin, undertake. Cf. incipēō.
ōrdō, -inis, m., row, rank; order, arrangement.
orīns, -entis, m. [P. of oricr], rising; east.
orior, 4, ortus (pres. ind. of conj. 3, orēris, orītur; imp. subj. orīrēr or orīrēr; fut. part. orītūrus), rise; appear; begin.
ōrnamentum, -i, n. [ōrnō], (that which adorns), ornament, jewel.
orinō, 1, adorn, ornament.
ōrō, 1 [ōs], pray, beg. Cf. petō and rogō.
ōs, oris, n., mouth, face. Oral.
os-tendō, 3, -di, -ānsuān [ob(s)], (stretch out before), show, display.
ōstium, -i, n. [ōs], entrance, door.
ōvis, -is, f., sheep.
ōvum, -i, n., egg. Oval.
pābulum, -i, n. [pāscō], food, fodder. Cf. cibus.
paeone, adv., nearly, almost. Cf. ferē.
paecintentia, -ae, f. [paecintēcō], repentance, penitence. Penitentiary.
palīs, -ūdis, f., swamp, marsh.
pār, paris, adj., equal.
parātus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of parēr], ready, prepared.
pārcō, 3, perpercī (parsī), parsum, spare; w. dat.
pārensis, -entis, m. and f., parent. (167. 1.)
päreō, 2, -ui, ——, (come forth, appear), be obedient to, obey; w. dat.
pariō, 3, peperi, paritum and partum, bring forth, lay.
pariter, adv. [pär], equally.
parō, 1, make ready, prepare, get.
parus, partis, r., part, piece, portion, share.
partior, 4 [pars], divide; part, share.
Parus, -i, r., Paros, an island in the Aegean Sea. (11. 4.)
parvus, -a, -um, adj. (comp. minor, superl. minimus), small, little.
päsco, 3, pāvī, pāustum, feed, tend; pasture.
passer, -eris, m., sparrow.
passus, -ūs, m. [pāteō], (a stretching out of the feet in walking), step, pace.
pāstor, -ōris, m. [pāscō], feeder, keeper; shepherd. (134.) Pastor.
pāteō, 2, -ui, ——, lie open, be open.
P. patēns, open.
pater, -tris, n., father. (134.) Paternal.
patienter, adv. [patiēns], patiently, with patience.
pator, 3, passus, bear, suffer, endure. Passion.
patria, -ae, r. [patrius, pater; sc. terra], fatherland, native land, country. Expatriate.
paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), few, little. Paucity.
paulō, adv. [paulus], by a little, little.
paulus, -a, -um, adj., little.
Paulus, -i, m., surname of Æmilius.
pauper, -eris, adj., poor. (107. 3.)
pāx, pācis, r. (no gen. plur.), peace. Pacify.
peccātum, -i, n. [peccō], mistake, fault, sin.
peccō, 1, make a mistake, commit a fault, sin.
pecetus, -oris, n., breast.
pecus, -oris, n., cattle, herd.
pedes, -itis, m. [pēs], foot-soldier.
pējur, -us, comp. of malus. (208.)
pellis, -is, r., skin, hide. Pelt.
pēsum, -i, n. [P. of pendō], (what is weighed out, e.g. wool, as a task for spinning), task; lesson, exercise.
per, prep. w. ace., through, by, by means of, on account of.
pēra, -ae, r., bag, wallet.
per-agrō, 1 [ager], wander through, pass over, traverse.
per-dō, 3, -didi, -ditum, destroy; lose. Cf. amittō.
per-dūcō, 3, -düxi, -ductum, lead or bring through.
per-eō, -ire, -i, ——, perish, be ruined. (327.)
per-fodiō, 3, -fodi, -fossum, dig through, pierce, stab.
per-fringō, 3, -frēgī, -frazctum, [frangō], break through, break.
per-fugō, 3, -fugi, ——, flee (for refuge).
pergō, 3, perrēxī, perrectum [per, regō], go on, continue.
periculum, -i, n. [perior, try], trial, attempt; risk, danger, peril.
perītus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of perior, try], (having tried), skilful.
per-mittō, 3, -misi, -missum, allow, grant, suffer, permit. Cf. sinō.
per-paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), very few.
Persae, -arum, m., the Persians.
per-securor, 3, -cutus, follow persistently, follow up.
per-spiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectum, [specium], see through, see into; perceive, observe. Perspective.
per-stō, 1, -stī, -stātum, stand fast, persevere, persist.

per-terreō, 2, -ui, -itum, thoroughly frighten.

pertinācia, -ae, f. [pertināx], perseverance; obstinacy. Pertinac-ity.

per-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum (come through to the end), arrive. Cf. adveniō.

pēs, pedis, m., foot. (105.) Pedal.

petō, 3, -īvi or -īi, -itum, seek, demand, beg. Petition. Cf. ōrō and rogō.

Philotimus, -ī, m., Philotimus.

piger, -gra, -grum, adj., slow, lazy, indolent.

piget, 2, -uit or -itum est, personal, it disgusts, (one) is dis- gusts. (416.)

pigritia, -ae, f. [piger], laziness, sloth, indolence.

pilum, -ī, n., javelin.

pīpiō, 1, chirp.

plaeō, 2, -ui, -itum [placidus], please; w. dat.

placidē, adv. [placidus], softly, gently, quietly. Placidly.

placidus, -a, -um, adj. [placeō], gentle, quiet, calm. Placid.

plānītīs, -ī, f. [plānus, even, level], (a flatness), level ground, plain.

plānus, -a, -um, adj. [plānītīs], even, flat, level, plain.

Plataeōnsēs, -ium, m., the Plataeans, inhabitants of Plataea.

plebs, plēbis, f., the common people, multitude. Plebian.

plēnus, -a, -um, adj. [pleō, fill], full.

plērusque, -aque, -unque, adj. (generally plur.), very many, most, the greater part.

plumbum, -ī, n., lead; plumbeum album, tin.

plūs, plūris, adj., comp. of nullus. (208.)

Plūtō, -ōnis, Pluto, m., god of the lower world.

pōculum, -ī, n., cup, bowl.

poēma, -atis, n., poem.

poena, -ae, f. [pūniō], guilt-money, fine, punishment. Penal.

Poenī, -ōrum, m., the Carthaginians.

Poenicus, -a, -um, adj. [Poeni], Carthaginian. See Punicus.

poēta, -ae, m., poet.

polliecor, 2, promise. Cf. pró-mittō.

Polyphēmus, -ī, m., Polyphemus, a Cyclops.

Pompēius, -ī, m., Pompey, a famous Roman general.

pōnum, -ī, n., fruit.

pondus, -eris, n. [pendō, weigh], weight.


pons, -ntis, m., bridge.

Popēdius, -ī, m., Popedius, a Latin.

populus, -ī, m., people.

Porcius, -ī, m., a Roman family name.

Porsera, -ae, m., Porsera, an Etruscan king.

porta, -ae, f., gate, door. Portal. Cf. jānua.

portō, 1, carry, bring. Cf. ferō and vehō.

porticus, -ūs, f. [porta], portico.

portus, -ūs, m., harbor, port. (247.)

possum, posse, potui, — [potis, able, sum], be able, can. (292.)

post, prep. w. acc., after, behind; as adv., for postea, afterwards.

post-eā, adv., afterwards.
posterus, -a, -um, adj. [post] (comp. posterior, superl. postrēmus or postumus), following, next.

posthāc, adv., after this time, hereafter, henceforth.

postridē, adv. [posterō diē], on the day after, the following day.

postulō, I, ask, demand. Cf. quaerō and rogō.

potēns, -entis, adj., [P. of possum], able, powerful; potent.

potior, 4 [potis, abilē], become master of, get, get possession of; w. gen. or abl. Cf. adipiscor.

praebēō, 2 [praec, habēō], hold forth, offer, furnish.

praecēpēs, -ipitis, adj. [praec, capturum], head foremost, headlong, rash, precipitate.

praecceptor, -ōris, m. [praecceptum], teacher, preceptor. Cf. magister.

praecceptum, -ī, n. [praecceptor], maxim, precept.

praeda, -ae, f., booty, spoil, prey.

Predatory.

praedicō, 1 [praec, dicō, -āre, make known], proclaim, boast.

praer-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go by, pass by, omit. (327. 2) Præterite.

praetōrius, -a, -um, adj. [praetor], (pertaining to a praetor), prætorian; noun, ex-prætor.

prātum, -ī, n., meadow.

premō, 3, pressē, pressum, press; with ōre, bite, eat.

[prex], precis, f. (used mostly in plur.), prayer, entreaty.

primus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. with comp. prior, no pos.], first, foremost. Prime.

princeps, -ipis, adj. [prīmus, capiō], (taking the first place), first, chief; noun, chief, leader. (105.) Prince.

prius-quam, conj., before that, before.

privō, 1, deprive; w. abl.

prō, interj., O!

prō, prep. w. abl., before, in behalf of, for; considering.

prō-cēō, 3, -cessi, -cessum, go forward, advance, proceed. Cf. prō-gredior.

procul, adv., far, far from.

prō-dō, 3, -dīdī, -ditum, give forth; hand down; give up, betray.

prō-duō, 3, -dūxī, - ductum, lead forth.

proelium, -ī, n., battle, combat. Cf. pāgna.

profiscor, 3, -fectus, set out, march, go. Cf. exčō and exgradior.

pro-fiteor, 2, -fessus [fateor], acknowledge, confess, declare. Profess.

prō-fligō, 1, overthrow, destroy, ruin. Profligate.

profundus, -a, -um, adj., deep, profound.

prō-gredior, 3, -gressus [gradior,
pro-hibeō | step], go forward, advance. Progress. Cf. procēdō.

pro-hibeō, 2 [habeō], hold in front of; hold back, check, hinder, prevent, prohibit.

prō-iciō, 3, -jećī, -jectum [jaciō], throw forward, cast away, cast. Project.

prō-mittō, 3, -mīsē, -missum [let or send forth], promise; let grow. Cf. polliceor.

prope, prep. w. acc., and adv. (comp. proprius, superl. proximē), near, near to; nearly, almost.

prō-pōnō, 3, -posū, -positum, put before, set forth; make known, declare. Propose.

prōpositum, ĭ, n. [prōpōnō], purpose, design, resolution. Proposition.

proprius, -a, -um, adj., (one's) own. Proper.

prō-pūgnō, 1 [fight in front], rush out to battle, make sorties.

prō-sequor, 3, -cūnus, follow, pursue. Prosequere.

Prōserpīna, -ae, f., Prōserpīna, daughter of Ceres.

prō-sterōnō, 3, -strāvī, -strātum, overthrow, destroy; prostrate.

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfūi, ——, be useful to, benefit; w. dat. (293.)

prō-vehō, 3, -vēxī, -vectum, carry forward, cowey; in pass., ride, sail.

prō-videō, 2, -vīdi, -visum, (see forward), provide.

prüfingentia, num. adj., indict. [quattuor], forty.

prüfingentia, -ae, -a, num. adj. [quattuor, centum], four hundred.

quaerō, 3, quaesīvi or -ii, quaesitum, seek, ask, inquire. (382.)

quaesō, 3, -śīvi, or -īi, —— [old form of quaerō], beg, pray.
quam, adv.; interrog., how, how much? rel., as much, as, than; quam saepissimè, as often as possible.
quantus, -a, -um, adj. [quam], how great, how much; as great as, as much as.
qua-rē, adv. (on account of which thing), wherefore.
quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj. [quattuor], fourth. Quart.
quae-su, adv., as if:
quater, num. adv. [quattuor], four times.
quattuor, num. adj., indecl., four.
quattuor-decim, num. adj. [decem], fourteen.
-que, conj. enclitic, and. Cf. et, atque, and âc.
quercus, -ûs, v., oak. (11. 4.)
qui, quae, quod, rel. and adj. pron., who, which, what, that. (279.)
qua, conj., because. Cf. quod.
quidam, quae dam, quid (quod) dam, indef. pron., certain, a certain one, a. (279. 4.)
qui-dem, adv. (never the first word), indeed, certainly, in truth; nē ... quidem, not even.
quin, conj. [qui, nē], but that, that.
quingenti, -â,-a, num. adj., indecl. [quinque, centum], five hundred.
quinquâgintâ, num. adj., indecl. [quinque], fifty.
quinque, num. adj., indecl., five.
quintus, -a, -um, num. adj. [quinque], fifth.
quintus decimus, num. adj., fifteenth.
quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., who? which? what? (279.)
quisquam, quidquam (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron., any, any one (at all). (279. 4.)
quisque, quaeque, quid (quod) que, indef. pron., each one, each, every (279. 4.)
quo, adv., where, whither.
quod, conj., because. Cf. quia.
quondam, adv., once, formerly. Cf. aliquandō and olim.
quoniam, adv. [cum (quom), jam], since, because. Cf. cum.
quoque, conj. and adv. (following the emphatic word), also, too.
quot, interrog. and rel. adj., indecl., how many; as many as.
radius, -î, m., beam, ray.
râdô, 3, râsi, rûsum, shave. Razor.
râna, -ae, f., frog.
râpâx, -âcis, adj. [râpiō], snatching, greedy, ravenous. Rapacious.
râpiō, 3, -ûi, -tum [râpâx], seize, snatch, drag away. Rapture.
rârûs, -â,-um, adj., far apart, dispersed, single. Rare.
ratîō, -onis, f., plan, method; reason.
re-cipiō, 3, -ēpū, -ceptum [capio], take back, get again, receive. Se recipere, withdraw, retreat.
recîtō, 1, read aloud, recite.
re-crocō, 1 [creo, make], refresh, recreate.
rēctē, adv. [rectus], rightly.
re-dēō, -îre, -îi, -itum [refō], go back, return. (327. 2.)
re-dîtus, -ûs, m. [redeō], return.
re-dûcō, -dûxi, -ductum, lead back, bring back. Reduce.
re-ferō, -ferre, rettuli, -lātum, carry back, bring back. (321.) Refer. Cf. reportō.
re-ficîō, 3, -ficus, -fectum [facio], make again; repair, restore, rebuild.
regina, -ae, f. [regō], (the ruling one), queen.
regiō, -onis, f., region.
rēgnō, 1 [rēgium, rēx], be king, rule, reign.

rēgnum, -i, n. [rēx], kingdom.

rēgō, 3, rēxi, rēctum [rēx], rule.

Rēgulus, -i, m., Regulus, a Roman consul.

re-iciō, 3, -jeiū, -jectum [jacō], throw back, drive back. REJECT.

re-linquo, 3, -liquī, -līctum [reliquus], leave behind, leave. RELINQUISS.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [relinquō], remaining, the rest.

re-mittō, 3, -miśī, -missum, send back. REMIT.

rēmus, -i, m., oar.

Rēmus, -i, m., Remus, twin brother of Romulus.

re-pellō, 3, repulsi, repulsum, drive back, repel, repulse.

re-perīō, 4, reperti, repertum [pa-riō, procure], find, discover, ascertain. Cf. inveniō.

re-peto, 3, -petīvi or -īi, -petītum, seek again, demand back; rēs repetō, demand restitution.

re-plēō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum, (fill again), fill up, fill. REPLENTE.

re-portō, 1, bring back, carry back. Cf. referō.

re-prehendō, 3, -dī, -hēnsum, hold back, restrain, reprove. REPREHENSIVE.

re-puto, 1, (count over), reckon; think over.

rēs, reī, r., thing, event, circumstance, affair (254); rēs publica, republic, state, commonwealth.

re-scindō, 3, -scīdi, -scissum, tear away, break down. RESCIND.

re-spondeō, 2, -dī, -spōnsum, (promise in return), answer, reply, respond.

re-stituō, 3, -ni, -ātum [statuō], replace; give back, return, restore. RESTITUTION.

re-stō, 1, restī, —, stop behind, stand still, remain.

re-tineō, 2, -tinū, -tentum [tenuō], hold back, restrain, retain.

re-verter, 3, -tī, -sum (deponent in pres. imp. and fut.), turn back, return. REVERT.

re-vocō, 1, call back, recall.

rēx, rēgis, m. [rēgo], (ruler), king. (105.)

Rhēa Silvia, -ae, f., Rhea Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, -i, m., the Rhine.

Rhodus, -i, f., Rhodes, an island in the Aegean Sea.

rīctus, -ūs, m. [ringō, open the mouth], jaws wide open; jaws.

rīdeō, 2, rīsi, rīsum, laugh. Cf. cachinnō. DÉRIDE.

rīsus, -ūs, m. [rīdeō], laughter.

rīvus, -ī, m., brook, stream. RIVAL.

rōbur, -oris, n., strength.

rogō, 1, ask, question. Cf. interrogō. (382.)

Rōma, -ae, r., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma], Roman; noun, a Roman.

Rōmulus, -i, m., Romulus, first king of Rome.

rosa, -ae, f., rose.

rōstrum, -i, n. [rōdō, gnaw], beak of a vessel. ROSTRUM.

rubeō, 2 [rubet], be red.

ruber, -bra, -brum, adj. [rubeō], red. RUBY.

ruina, -ae, r. [ruō, fall)], (a falling down), downfall, disaster, ruin.

rūpes, -is, r. [ru(m)pō, break), (the broken thing) cliff, rock.

rūrsus, adv. [re-vorsus, revertō], (turned back), back, again.

rūs, rūris, n., the country. (336.)
rūsticus, -ī, m. [rūs], countryman, peasant. Rustic.

sacer, -era, -crum, adj., sacred.
saepe, adv., often, frequently.
sagitā, -ae, f., arrow.
Saguntum, -ī, n., Saguntum, a town in Spain.
Sallustius, -ī, m., Sallust, a Roman historian.
salūs, -ūtis, f., safety, welfare.
SALUTARY.
Samnīs, -īnis, m., a Samnite.
sanguis, -inis, m., blood. Sanguinary. Cf. crūor.
sapiēns, -entis, adj. [sapiō, be wise], wise, sensible.
sapienter, adv. [sapiēns], wisely.
satis, adv., enough. Satisfy.
Sāturnalus, -ī, m., Saturn, god of agriculture.
saxum, -ī, n., rock.
schola, -ae, f., school.
scīō, 4, scīvi, scītum, know, know how. SCIENCE.
Scipīō, -onis, m., Scipio, a famous Roman general.
scriba, -ae, m. [scribō], (one who writes), clerk. Scribe.
scribō, 3, scripsī, scriptum [scriba], write. SCRIBBLE.
scriptor, -ōris, m. [scribō], writer, author.
scriptum, -ī, n. [scribō], writing, written work. SCRIPT.
scītum, -ī, n., shield.
še-cēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum, go apart, withdraw, retire; sceōde.
secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor], following, next; second; favorable.
sed, conj., but. (303.)
sedēō, 2, sēdī, sēssum, sit. SESSION.
sēdēs, -is, f. [sedēō], seat, abode.
semper, adv., always, ever.
sempiternus, -a, -um, adj. [semper], everlasting.
senātor, -ōris, m. [senex], senator.
senātus, -ūs, m. [senex], council of elders, senate.
senectūs, -ūtis, f. [senex], old age.
senex, senis, adj., old; noun, old man. (262.) SENILE.
senior, -ōris, adj. [comp. of senex], elder, old person.
sēnsus, -ūs, m. [sentīō], feeling, sense, perception.
sententia, -ae, f. [sentīō], opinion, purpose. SENTENCE.
sentīō, 4, sensī, sensum [sēnsus], feel, know (by the senses), see, perceive.
septem, num. adj., indecl., seven.
September, -bris, m. [septem], September. Often as adj.
septem-decim, num. adj. [decem], seventeen.
septīes, num. adv. [septem], seven times.
septimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [septem], seventh.
sequor, 3, secūtus, follow. SEQUENCE.
serō, 3, sēvī, saturum, sow, plant.
serta, -ōrum, n. [serō, plait], garlands, wreaths of flowers.
sērus, -a, -um, adj., late.
servīō, 4. [servus], be a slave to, serve; w. dat.
servitūs, -ūtis, f. [servus], slavery, servitude.
servō, 1, save, keep; preserve.
servus, -ī, m. [servīō], slave, servant. (66.)
sexagrīntā, num. adj., indecl. [sex], sixty.
sextus, -a, -um, num. adj. [sex], sixth.
sī, conj., if, whether.
sic, adv., so, thus, in this manner.
   Cf. ita.
Sicca, -ae, m., Sicca, a friend of
   Cicero.
Sicilia, -ae, f., Sicily.
sidus, -eris, n., star, constellation.
   Sidereal. (301.)
signum, -ūn, n., mark, sign, signal.
silva, -ae, f., wood, forest. Silvan.
similis, -ēs, adj. [similis], like, re-
   sembling, similar. (207.)
simplex, -icis, adj., simple, plain, artless.
simul, adv. [similis], at the same time.
sin, conj. [si-nē], but if, however, if.
sine, prep. w. abl. without.
singuli, -ae, -a, num. adj., separate,
   single, one by one. (311. 8.)
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left (hand).
   Sinister.
sinō, 3, sivi, situm, allow, permit.
   Cf. permittō.
sinus, -ūs, m., bosom, lap, folds of a
garment.
sitis, -is, f. (acc. -im, abl. -i), thirst.
socer, -erī, m., father-in-law.
socius, -i, m., ally, companion. As-
   sociate.
Sócratēs, -is, m., Socrates, a famous
   Greek philosopher.
sol, sólis, m., sun (no gen. plur.).
   Solar.
solēō, 2, solitus, be accustomed, wont.
   (p. 177, note 2.)
Solon, -ōnis, m., Solon, the great law-
giver of Athens.
solus, -a, -um, adj., alone, single;
   sole. (200.)
solvō, 3, solvi, solūtum, loose, loosen;
   break; weigh anchor, set sail.
   Solve.
somnus, -i, m., sleep.
soror, -ōris, f., sister.
sors, -ōris, f., lot, condition. Sort.
sortior, 4 [sors], draw lots, obtain.
   by lot.
spargō, 3, -sī, -sum, strew, scatter.
   Sparse.
Spartacus, -ī, m., Spartacus, a gladiator.
spatium, -ī, n., room, space; period.
spectō, 1 [speciō, look], look at, be-
   hold, witness. Spectacle.
speculor, 1, spy out, watch.
specus, -ūs, m., cave, den.
spēs, speī, f. [spērō], hope, expecta-
   tion.
spoliō, 1, rob, plunder, spoil, de-
   spoil.
statim: adv. [stō], (standing there),
   on the spot, immediately, at once.
statua, -ae, f. [statūa], (the thing
   set up), statue.
statūō, 3, -ūn, -ūtum, put, place;
   determine, think, believe.
stella, -ae, f., star. (301.) Stellar.
stō, 1, steti, statum, stand.
strāgēs, -is, f., slaughter, carnage.
stringō, 3, -nxi, strictum (draw
   tight), graze; draw, unsheathe.
studeō, 2, -ūn, —— [studium], be
   eager, strive earnestly for; study;
   w. dat.
studium, -i, n. [studeō], zeal,
   eagerness; study.
stultītia, -ae, f. [stultus], folly.
stultus, -a, -um, adj., foolish, silly.
suāvis, -ē, adj., sweet, delightful.
   Cf. dulcis. Suavity.
suāviter, adv. [suāvis], sweetly,
   delightfully.
subducō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, draw
   from under, draw up.
subeō, -ire, -iō, -itum, go under or
   up to, enter; undergo. (327.)
### subitō
adv. [subeō], suddenly, unexpectedly.

### sub-moveō, 2
-mōvī, -mōtum (move from beneath), remove, drive away.

### subsidiun, -i, n. [subsideō], aid, support, relief, assistance.

### sub-siliō, 4, -ui, — [saliō, leap], jump up. Cf. désiliō and trānsiliō.

### sub-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum (come to one's relief), help, aid, assist. Cf. succurrō.

### succurrē, 3, -currī, -currum [sub], (run up to), help, aid, succor.

### suferē, sufferre, sustuli, sublātum [sub], bear up under, undergo. Suferre.

### suī, reflex. pron., of himself (herself, itself, themselves). (204.)

### Sūlla, -ae, n., Sulla, a famous Roman general and statesman.

### sum, esse, fuī, —, be, exist. (72.)

### summus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of superus, highest.

### sūmō, 3, sūmpsi, súmptum, take, take up; assume.

### super, prep. w. acc. and abl., over, above, on top of.

### superē, adv. [superbus], proudly, haughtily.

### superbus, -a, -um, adj. [super], proud. Superbus.

### superior, -us, adj., comp. of superus, higher, superior.

### superō, 1 [super], pass over; surpass, overcome; conquer. (188.)

### super-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, remain over; survive, exist.

### suprēmus, -a, -um, adj., sup. of superus, highest; last.

### suscipiō, 3, -cipī, -ceptum [sub, capiō], undertake.

### suspendō, 3, -di, -pensum [sub], hang up, suspend, hang.

### suspicor, 1 [suspiciō, look askance at], mistrust, suspect.

### sustineō, 2, -tinui, -tentum [sub, teneō], hold up, bear, endure; sustain.

### suus, -a, -um, poss. pron. [suī], his, hers, her, its, theirs, their (own).

### taceō, 2, tacui, tacitum, be silent, be silent about. Tacit.

### taedet, 2, taeduit, taesum ost, impers., it disgusts, wearies; (one) is disgusted, wearied. (416.)

### tālea, -ae, f., thin bar.

### tam, adv., so; tam ... quam, as ... as. Cf. ita and sic.

### tamen, adv., yet, but, nevertheless.

### tandem, adv. [tam], (just so far), at length, finally.

### tangō, 3, tecti, tactum, touch.

### tantō, adv. [tantus], by so much, so much the (with comparatives).

### tantum, adv. [tantus], only.

### tantus, -a, -um, adj., so great.

### Tarentinus, -ae, -um, adj., of Tarrentum, Tarentine.

### Tarquiniius, -i, n., Tarquin the Proud, seventh king of Rome.

### tectum, -i, n. [tegō, cover], covering, shelter, roof.

### tēlum, -i, n., weapon.

### tenerārius, -a, -um [temerē], rash, inconsiderate.

### temerē, adv., rashly, inconsiderately.

### temeritās, -ātīs, f. [temerē], chance; rashness, temerity.

### tempestās, -ātīs, f. [tempus], (state or condition of time), weather; stormy weather, storm, tempest.

### templum, -ī, n., temple.

### tempus, -oris, n., time. Temporal.

### tenebrae, -arum, f., darkness, shades.
tenebris, -a, -um, adj. [-tenebrac], (full of darkness), dark, gloomy.
teneō, 2, -uī, tentum, hold, keep, have; memoria tenēre, remember.
tener, -era, -erum, adj., soft, delicate, tender.
tennis, -e, adj., thin, light.
ter, num. adv. [trēs], thrice, three times.
Terentius, -i, m., a Roman family name.
tergum, -i, n., back.
terra, -ae, f., earth, land. Terrace.
terreo, 2 [terror], frighten, alarm, terrify.
terror, -ōris [terreo], terror, alarm.
tertiō, adv. [tertium], the third time.
tertius, -a, -um, num. adj. [trēs], third.
tertius decimus, num. adj., thirteenth.
testimonialium, -i, n. [testor, bear witness], witness, evidence, testimony.
testūdō, -inis, f. [testa, shell], tortoise; shed or covering to protect besiegers.
Teutonus, -um, m., the Teutons, a German tribe.
Thalēs, -is, m., Thales, a Greek philosopher.
Themistoclēs, -is, m., Themistocles, a famous Athenian.
Ticinus, -i, m., the Ticinus, a river of Italy.
tigris, -is, or -idis, tiger.
timeō, 2, -uī, —— [timor], fear, be afraid of.
Timoleōn, -ontis, m., Timoleon, a Corinthian general.
timor, -ōris, m. [timeō], fear, dread, alarm. Timorous.
tolerō, 1, bear, endure. Tolerate.
tollō, 3, sustuli, sublatum, lift, raise, pick up; weigh (anchor).
tot, adj., indecl., so many. Cf. quot.
tōtus, -a, -um, adj., whole, all, entire.
(200.) Total.
trāctō, 1 [trahō], handle, manage, treat.
trā-dō, 3, -dī, -ditum [trāns], give over, deliver; relate, recount. Tradition.
trahō, 2, traxī, -ctum, draw, drag; derive.
trā-iciō, 3, -jēci, jectum [trāns, jaciō], throw across; pass over, cross.
trājectus, -ūs, m. [trāciō], a crossing over, passage.
transquillitās, -ātis, f. tranquil-lus], calmness, tranquillity; a calm.
trāns, prep. w. acc., across, beyond, over.
trān-scendō, 3, -dī, -scēnum [scandō, climb], step or pass over; cross. Transcend.
trāns-cō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go over, cross. (372.)
trāns-fīgō, 3, -fixī, -fixum, pierce through, pierce, stab; transfix.
trāns-nilō, 4, -ii, and -uī, —— [sau-iō, leap], leap over or across. Cf. dēsilō and subsidiō.
trecenti, -ae, -a, num. adj. [trēs, centum], three hundred.
tredēcin, num. adj., indecl. [trēs, decem], thirteen.
trēs, tria, num. adj., three. (311. 4.)
tribūnus, -i, m. [tribus, tribe], tribune.
trigintā, num. adj., indecl. [trēs], thirty.
trīpartītō, adv. [trēs, partior], in three divisions.
trīstis, -e, adj., sad, gloomy.

triumphus, -i, triumph.

tū, pers. pron., thou. (264.)

tuba, -ae, r., trumpet. (14.)

tueor, 2, tuitus, and tūtus, look at; watch, defend, guard. Cf. défendō.

Tullia, -ae, r., Tullia, Cicero's daughter.

tum, adv., at that time, then.

tunc, adv. [tum], at that time, then.

turgidulus, -a, -um, adj., swollen.

Turgin.

turpis, -e, adj., ugly, foul; base, disgraceful, shameful.

Turpiter, adv. [turpis], foully, basely, shamefully.

turpitūdō, -inis, r. [turpis], ugliness, baseness.

turris, -is, r., tower. (149.)

tūtus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of tueor], safe.

tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., thy, thine; your, yours (of only one).

tyrannus, -i, m., tyrant.

ubi, adv., where, when.

ūllus, -a, -um, adj. [for anulus, diminutive of unus], any, any one. (200.)

ūltior, -us, adj., comp. (no positive), further.

ūltimus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of ultior), furthest, last. Ultimate.

umerus, -i, m., shoulder.

unde, adv., whence.

undique, adv., from all parts, on all sides, everywhere.

ūniversus, -a, -um, adj., (turned into one), all together.

unquam, adv., at any time, ever.

ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj., one; clone. (200, 311, 3.)

urbs, -is, r., city. (165.) Suburbs.

urgeō, 2, ursī, ——, press, drive, impel, urge.

usque, adv., all the time, continually.

ut or uti, adv. and conj., how, as; that, in order that, so that.

uter, -tra, -trum, interrog. pron., which of two. (200.)

utereque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron., each of two, both. (200.)

utilis, -e, adj. [ūtor], useful, advantageous.

uti-nam, adv., would that, O that, I wish that.

ūtor, 3, ists, use, employ; w. abl.

utrum, adv., whether; used chiefly in double questions.

ūva, -ae, r., grape, bunch of grapes.

uxor, -ōris, r., wife. Cf. conjunct.

vagor, i, go to and fro, wander. Vagrant.

valeō, 2, -ui, -itum, be strong or well; valē, farewell, good by. Cf. convalesceō.

valētūdō, -inis, r. [valeō], state of health, health.

validus, -a, -um, adj. [valeō], strong, stout, sturdý. Valid.

vallis (or vallēs), -is, r., valley, vale.

varius, -a, -um, adj., different, changeable, various.

Varrō, -onis, m., Varro, a Roman consul.

vastō, 1 [vastus, waste, desolate], lay waste, ravage.

vehō, 3, vexi, vectum, carry, draw, convey; pass., ride, sail.

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift, fleet, quick. (179.) Velocity.

vēnātor, -ōris, m. [vēnōr, hunt], hunter.
venēnum, -ī, n., poison. Venom.
venia, -ae, f., indulgence, mercy, kindness. Venial.
veniō, 4, vēni, venium, come.
ventus, -ī, m., wind.
Venus, -eris, f., Venus, goddess of love.
Venusia, -ae, f., Venusia, a town in Apulia.
venustus, -a, -um, adj. [Venus], lovely, charming.
vēr, vēris, n., spring. Vernal.
verbum, -ī, n., word. Verb.
vereor, 2, reverence, respect, fear.
vērō, adv. and conj. [vērus], in truth, in fact, but in fact.
vērum, -ī, n. [vērus], the truth.
vērus, -a, -um, adj., true, real.
vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., your, yours (of more than one).
veterinarius, -a, -um, adj., superl. of vetus.
vестиō, 4 [vestis, garment], clothe.
vētō, 1, -ū, -itum, forbid, prevent. Veto.
vetus, -eris, adj. (comp. vetustior, superl. veterrimus), old. (141, 208.)
vetustior, -us, adj., comp. of vetus.
via, -ae, f., way, road, street.
vicinus, -a, -um, adj. [vicus], near, neighboring. Vicinity.
victor, -ōris, m. [vi(n)cō], conqueror, victor.
victōria, -ae, f. [victor], victory.
vicus, -ī, m., village.
video, 2, vidi, visum, see, perceive; pass., be seen, seem. Vision.
vigil, adj. [vigeō, be lively], watchful. (151, 4.) Vigilant.
vigilla, -ae, f. [vigilō, vigil], a watching, watch, i.e., the fourth part of the night.
vigilō, 1 [vigil], watch.
viginti, num. adj., indecl., twenty.
vincō, 4, vinxi, vincum, bind.
vincō, 3, vici, victum, conquer, de feat. (186.)
vindicō, 1, claim; avenge, punish. Vindicate.
vīnum, -ī, n., wine.
viola, -ae, f., violet.
vir, vīri, m., man, hero. (138, 262.)
virgō, -īnis, f., maiden, virgin.
virtus, -ūtis, f. [vir], (manliness), courage, bravery; virtue.
vīs, vīs, r. (gen. and dat., rare), strength, power. (262.)
vīta, -ae [vīvō], life. Vital.
vītis, -is, f. [vīcō, twist together], vine.
vītium, -ī, n. [vītis], (a moral twist), fault, blamish, vice. Cf. culpa.
vitō, 1, avoid, shun.
vitrum, -ī, n., wood, a dye.
vituperō, 1, blame, censure. Vituperation. Cf. culpō.
vīvō, 3, vīxi, vītum [vīvus], live. (194.)
vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [vīvō], alive, living.
vix, adv., hardly, with difficulty.
vōlō, velle, volvō, ———, wish, be willing, desire, intend. (316, 319.)
voluptās, -ātis, f., pleasure, enjoyment.
vōx, vōcis, f. [vocō, call], voice.
vulnerō, 1 [vulnus], wound, hurt, injure. Vulnerable.
vulnus, -eris, n. [vulnerō], wound.
vulpēs, -is, ēs, f., fox.
vultus, -ūs, m., countenance, looks, features.
Zama, -ae, f., Zama, a town in Africa.
# ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

## a

a, commonly not translated; quidam, quaedam, quoddam (279. 5).  

able (be), possum (292).  

about, ì, w. abl.  

absent (be), absum (297).  

accept, accipio, 3.  

accompany, comîtor, 1.  

accord (own), ípse, -a, -um (270. 6).  

accuse, accusó, 1.  

across, trúns, w. acc.  

act, agó, 3.  

admire, admiration, 1.  

admonish, moneó, 2 (112).  

adorn, òrao, 1.  

advance, procédó, 3; prögredior, 3.  

advice, cónsilium, -i, n.  

advise, moneó, 2 (112).  

afar, longé.  

affair, rès, rei, r. (254.)  

afraid (be), metuó, 3; timéo, 2.  

Africa, África, -ae, v.  

after, post, w. acc.; cum, w. subj.; postquam, w. id.  

afterwards, postea, deinde.  

again, iterum, rúsus.  

against, adversus, contrá, in, w. acc.  

age (old), senectás, -âtis, r.  

agriculture, agri cultura, -ae, v.  

aid, auxilium, -i, n.  

air, ãer, âris, m.  

Alexander, Alexander, -drí, m.  

alive, vivus, -a, -um.

## arrangement

all, omnis, -e; tótus, -a, -um (200)  

Alps, Alpès, -ium, r.  

alone, sólus, -a, -um (200).  

 aloud (read), recitó, l.  

altar, ára, -ae, r.  

always, semper.  

ambassador, légátas, -i, m.; órá- 

tor, -òris, m.  

among, in, w. abl.; inter, w. acc.  

ancient, antiquus, -a, -um; vetus, 

-eris (141).  

and, et; atque, or âc; -que.  

Androcles, Androclus, -i, m.  

anger, íra, -ae, r.  

angrily, cum ìrâ (144).  

animal, animal, -âlis, n. (149).  

another, alius, -a, -ud (201); one  

... another, aliqu... alius.  

another's, aliusnus, -a, -um.  

answer, respondó, 2, w. dat.  

any, ùllus, -a, -um (200); alíquis, 

-qua, -quid, or -quod (279); quis 

(p. 211, note 15); quisquam, 

—, quiquam (279. 6).  

approach, approxínquó, l, w. dat, 

and ad, w. acc.  

arm, n., bracchium, -i, n.  

arm, v., armó, 1.  

arms, arma, -örum, n.  

army, exercitus, -ús, m., the general 

word; on the march, ágmen, -inis, 

n.; in order of battle, aciés, -êli, r.  

Arpium, Arpium, -i, n.  

arrangement, ordó, -inis, m.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.
arrive, adveniō, 4; perveniō, 4.
arrows, sagitta, -ae, f.
art, ars, artis, r.
as, ut; as... as, tam... quam;
same... as, idem... qui; (= since), cum; (= when), cum.
Asia, Asia, -ae, f.
ashamed (be), pudet, 2 (415).
ask of, quaerō, 3.
assemble, conveniō, 4.
at, in, w. acc. or abl.; ad, w. acc.;
apud, w. acc.; in combination w. verbs (wonder at, etc.), see the verbs; w. names of towns, locative case (334).
Athenian, Athēnienis, -e.
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, r.
attentively, diligenter.
author, auctor, -ōris, m.
away (go), abeō (327); discēdō, 3.
away from, à or ab, w. abl.; è or ex, w. abl.

back (bring or carry), referō (321); reportō, 1.
bad, malus, -a, -um; improbus, -a, -um.
basely, turpiter.
battle, pūgna, -ae, f.; proelium, ī, n.
be, sum (73).
bear, ferō (321); vehō, 3; tolerō, 1; (off), auferō.
beast, bōstia, -ae, f.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
beauty, pulchritūdō, -inis, r.
because, quod; quia.
become, fō (327); it becomes, decet, 2 (415).
begin, incipio, 3; ordior, 4.
believe, crédō, 3, w. dat.

benefit, n., beneficium, -ī, n.
benefit, v., prōsum (293), w. dat.
besiege, obsideo, 2; oppūgnō, 1.
best, optimus, -a, -um.
better, melior, -us, compar. of bonus (208).
between, inter, w. acc.
big, māgnus, -a, -um.
bind, vincō, 4.
bird, avis, -is, r. (154).
black, niger, -gra, -grum; āter, ātra, ātrum.
blame, vituperō, 1; culpō, 1.
blind, caecus, -a, -um.
blood, sanguis, -inis, m.; cruor, -ōris, m.
boar, aper, aprī, m.
boat, nāvicula, -ae, f.; cymba, -ae, f.
body, corpus, -oris, n.
bold, audāx, -ācis.
boldly, audācter.
book, liber, -brī, m.
booty, praeda, -ae, f.
born (be), nāscor, 3.
Boston, Bostonia, -ae, f.
both (each of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque (200); both... and, et... et.
boy, puer, -erī, m.
bow, arcus, -ūs, m. (247).
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, r.
brake, frangō, 3; (through) perfringō, 3.
brreeze, ventus, -ī, m.; aura, -ae, f.
bribe, corrumpō, 3.
bride, pōns, pontīs, m.
bring, portō, 1; ferō (321); (up), ēducō, 1.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brook, rīvus, -ī, m.
brother, frater, -tris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, 1.
burden, onus, -eris, n.
but, at; autem; sed (393); (that), quin.
buy, emō, 3.
by, a, ab, w. abl.; (denoting means or instrument), w. abl. alone.

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, m.
call, nōminō, 1; appellant, 1; vocō, 1.
calm, aequōs, -a, -um; placidus, -a.
camp, castra, -ōrum, n. [-um.
Campania, Campaniā, -ae, f.
can, possim (292).
care, cūrā, -ae, f.
carefully, diligenter; cum cūrā (144).
carry, portō, 1; ferō (321); (back), referō; carry on war, bellum gerere.
cart, carrus, -i, m.
Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, f.
Cato, Catō, -onis, m.
certain (a), quidam, quae
dam, quid (quod)dam (279. 4); sure, certus, -a, -um.
chance, foris, -tis, f.; casus, -ūs, m.
change, mutō, 1.
cherish, colō, 3.
chief, princeps, -cipis, m.
children, punī, -ōrum, m.; libe
di, -ōrum, m. (60).
Cicero, Cicero, -onis, m.
Cimbri, Cimbrī, -ōrum, m.
circumstance, rēs, rei, f.
citadel, arc, arcis, f.
citizen, civis, -is, m. and f. (104.)
city, urbs, -is, f.
clerk, scriba, -ae, m.
cliff, rūpes, -is, f.
clothe, vestīō, 4.
cold, adj., frigidus, -a, -um.
cold, n., frīgus, -oris, n.
Collatīneus, Collatīneus, -i, m.
come, veniō, 4; (down), descen
dō, 3; (out), ēgredior, 3; (to
together), conveniō, 4; (off), abeō (327).
coming, n., adventus, -ūs, m.
command, imperō, 1, w. dat.; ju
to, 2, w. acc.; præsum, w. dat.
commander, imperātor, -ōris, m.;
dux, ducis, m.
commonwealth, rēs pública, rei
pública, v.
comrade, comes, -tis, m. and v.
companion, comes, -tis, m. and f.
compel, cōgō, 3.
condemn, dāmiō, 1.
conquer, superō, 1; vincō, 3 (186).
consul, consul, -is, m.
consulship, consulātus, -ūs, m.
contemplate, contemplor, 1.
contented, contentus, -a, -um, w. abl.
converse, colloquor, 3.
Corinth, Corinthius, -i, f.
Corinellia, Cornēlia, -ae, f.
correct, corrigō, 3.
counsel, consilium, -i, n.
country (fatherland), patria, -ae, F.; (not city), rūs, rūris, N.
courage, virtūs, -ūris, f.
covered with leaves, frondōsus,
-a, -um.
cowardice, iūnāvia, -ae, f.
cowardly, iūnāvus, -a, -um.
create, creō, 1.
creator, créātor, -ōris, m.
cross, crux, trānssectō, 3; tr. and
intr., trānsseō (327).
cruelly, crūdēlōter.
cultivate, colō, 3.
Cumae, Cumae, -arum, f.
cunning, n., calliditās, -ātis, f.
cup, pōculum, -ī, n.
Cyrus, Čyrus, -ī, m.

Dāedalus, Dāedalus, -ī, m.
daily, cotīdiē.
danger, periculum, -ī, n.
daughter, filia, -ae, v.
day, diēs, -ī, m. and r. (254).
daybreak (at), prīmā lūce.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
death, mors, -itis, r.
deepest, altus, -a, -um; profundus, -a, -um.
defeat, n., clādēs, -is, r.
defeat, v., vincō, 3; superō, 1 (186).
defend, dēfendō, 3.
defender, dēfensor, -ōris, m.
delay, mōra, -ae, r.
delight, dēlectō, 1.
deliver, dēferō (321).
demand restitution, rēs repetō, 3.
Demosthenes, Dēmosthenēs, -is.
depart, discēdō, 3; excēdō (327).
deprieve, privō, 1; w. abl.
descend, dēscendō, 3.
desert, dēserō, 3.
deserve, mercō, mercor, 2.
design, cōnsilium, -ī, n.
desire, volō (316); desiderō, 1 (319); cupidō, 3.
despair, dēspērō, 1.
despise, cōttēnō, 3.
destroy, dēcēro, 2.
difficult, difficilis, -e. (207.)
difficulty (with), vix.
diligently, diligentē.
discharge, fungōr, 3, v. abl.
disclose, ōnūntiō, 1.
disgraceful, turpis, -e.
disgusted (be), pigēt, 2 (418).
divide, dividō, 3; (share), partior, 4.
do, faciō, 3; agō, 3.
dog, canis, -is, m. and r.
doubt, n., dubium, -ī, n.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
dove, columba, -ae, r.
down (tear), recessō, 3; (come) descendō, 3.
draw, trahō, 3; (up), subdūcō, 3.
drink, bibō, 3.
drive, agō, 3; (off'), submoveō, 2.
duty, officium, -ī, n.
dwell, habitō, 1; vivō, 3 (194).
each (one), quisque quaeque, quid (quod)que (279. 4); (of two), uterque utraque, utrumque (200).
eagle, aquila, -ae, r.
earth, terra, -ae, r.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e. (207.)
cat, edō, 3.
egg, ōvum, -ī, n.
eight, octō.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut.
elegant, elegāns, -antis.
elephant, elephanthus, -ī, m.
ext, alius, -a, -ud (201).
embark, cōnsceundō, 3.
employ, admoveō, 2; utor, 3, w. abl.
encircle, ciugō, 3.
end, n., finis, -is, m. (164.)
end, v., finīo, 4.
endure, patior, 3; ferō (321), tolerō, 1.
endurance, fortītūdō, -inis, r.
enemy, hostis, -is, m and r.; inimicus, -ī, m. (172).
enjoy, fruōr, 2, w. abl.
Ennius, Ennius, -ī, m.
enough, satis.
enough, enter, ingredior, 3; inco (227).
entertain the hope, venio in spem.
entreaty, precēs, -um, f.
Epirus, Ėpirus, -ī, r.
equally, pariter.
equanimity, aequus animus, m.
Europe, Europēa, -ae, r.
even, etiam: ipse (270. 6).
evident (it is), cōnstat, 1.
excellently, optimē.
explain, explicō, 1.
expulsion, P. of expello.
eye, oculus, -ī, m.

Fabricius, Fabricius, -ī, m.
fact, rēs, rei, f.
fail, dēficiō, 3; dēsum (297).
fail, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
fail, fidus, -a, -um; fidēlis, -e.
faithfully, fidēliter.
Faliscans, Falisci, -ōrum, m.
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
far and wide, longē lātēque.
farm, agricola, -ae, m.
father, pater, -tris, m.
father-in-law, socer, -erī, m.
fault, vitium, -i, n.; culpa, -ae, r.; find fault with, vituperō, 1; culpō, 1.
favor, favēō, 2, w. dat.
fear, n., metus, -ūs, m.
fear, v., timō, 2; metuō, 3.
few, pauci, -ae, -a.
fidelity, fidēs, -ēs, f.
field, ager, agrī, m.
fierce, atrōx, -ōcis; ferōx, -ōcis.
fiftieth, quīnquāgēsinus, -a, -um.
fifty, quīnquāgintā.
fight, pugnō, 1; dīmitō, 1.
fill, imploō, 2, -ēvi, -ēsum; compleō, 2.
finally, dēnique.

find, reperiō, 4; inveniō, 4.
finger, digitus, -ī, m.
finish, finiō, 4; cōnfiniō, 3.
fires, ignis, -is, m.
first, prīmus, -a, -um.
fit, aptō, 1.
five, quīnque.
five hundred, quīngenti, -ae, -a.
flite, fugiō, 3.
flot, clāssis, -is, f. (154.)
flight, fuga, -ae, r.
flack, grex, gregis, f.
flow, fluō, 3.
flower, flōs, flōris, m.
fodder, pābulum, -i, n.
follow, sequor, 3.
fool, stultitia, -ae, f.
food, cibus, -i, m.
foot, pēs, pedis, m.
foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, m.
for, conj., nam; enim (not the first word).
for, sign of dative; prep., dē, prō, w. abl.; of time, space, purpose, in, w. acc.
forces, cōpiāe, -ārum, f.
forget, obliviscor, 3.
forgetful, oblitis, -a, -um.
former (the), ille (275. 6).
forth (go), excēō (327); ēgre-
dior, 3.
fortify, māniō, 4.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
forty, quadragintā.
forum, forum, -i, n.
forward (go), prōcēdō, 3; prō-
gredior, 3.
fouly, turpiter.
fourteen, quattuordecim.
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.
free, liber, -era, -erum. (71.)
free from, liberō, 1; w. abl.
friend, amīcus, -ī, m.
frighten, terrīō, 2.
frog, rana, -ae, r.
from, dē, w. abl.; away from, ā or ab, w. abl.; out of, ē or ex, w. abl.; (afar), longē.
fruit, fructus, -ūs, m.
full, plēnus, -a, -um.
furnish, praebēō, 2.

Galba, Galba, -ae, m.
game, lūdus, -ī, m.
garden, hortus, -ī.
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, r.
Gauls, Galli, -orum, m.
general, dux, ducis, m. and f.; imperātor, -oris, m.
Germans, Germani, -orum, m.
get, adipsicor, 3; (possession), potior, 4, w. abl.; (by lot), sortior, 4.
gift, dōnum, -ī, n.
girl, puella, -ae, f.
give, dē, 1.
glory, gloria, -ae, r.
go, ēō (527); (forth or out), exeō; (off or away), abēō; discēdō, 3; (down), descendō, 3.
Gōd, Deus, -ī, m. (262).
goddess, dea, -ae, f.
gold, aurum, -ī, n.
golden, aureus, -a, -um.
good, bonum, -ī, n. and f. (71, 268).
good thing, bonum, -ī, n.
grain, frumentum, -ī, n.
great, māgnus, -a, -um.
greatly, māximē.
Greece, Graecia, -ae, f.
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um.
guard, u., custōs, -ōdis, m. and f.
guard, v., custōdiō, 4.

hand, manus, -ūs, r.
handsome, pulcher, -chrā, -chrum.
Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, m.

happy, beātus, -a, -um; fēlix, -icis.
hard, dūrus, -a, -um; (difficult), difficīlis, -e.
hasten, contendō, 3.
hauktily, superbē.
have, habēō, 2.
he, is, līc (270); ille (275).
head, caput, -ūtis, n.; be at the head of, praecum (297).
headlong, praeceps, -cipitis.
hear, audīō (223).
heart, cor, cordis, n.
heat, calor, -ōris, m.
heaven, caelum, -ī, n.
heavy, gravus, -e.
Hector, Hector, -oris, m.
hero, vir, virī, m. (262).
hesitate, dubitō, 1; cumōtor, 1.
high, altus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, -is, m. (154.)
hiself, see self.
his, ēus (270); illius (275); (own), sumus, -is, -um.
history, historia, -ae, f.
hold, habēō, 2; teneō, 2.
home, domicilium, -ī, n.; dominus, -ūs, r. (262).
Homer, Homērus, -ī, m.
honor, n., honestus, -ātis, r.
honor, r., honorōō, 1.
hope, spēs, -i, r.
Horus, Horātius, -ī, m.
horn, cornu, -ūs, n.
horse, equus, -ī, m.
horseback (ride), in equō vehī; equītō, 1.
horsman, horse-soldier, eques, -ītis, m.
hour, hōra, -ae, r.
house, domus, -ūs, r. (262).
how, quam; (many), quot.
huge, māgnus, -a, -um; immā-
nis, -e; ingēns, -entis.
human, hūmānus, -a, -um.
hundred, centum.
hunger, famēs, -is, r.
hunter, vēnātor, -ōris, m.
hurl, conticō, 3.
hurtful (be), noceō, 2, w. dat.
hustle, exturbō, 1.

I, ego (264).
Icarus, Ἰκάρος, -i, m.
if, si; † y' not, nisi.
ignorant (be), nesciō, 4; ignorō.
illustrious, clārūs, -a, -um.
imitate, imitōr, 1.
immediately, statim.
in, in, w. abl.
increase, augeō, 2.
inhabitant, incolā, -ae, m. cnd r.
inhabit, habitō, 1; incolō, 3.
injure, noceō, 2; obsum; w. dat.
instruct, erudiō, 4; docceō, 2.
intend, in animō est; w. dat.
into, in, w. acc.
invite, invītō, 1.
iron (of), ferreus, -a, -um.
island, insula, -ae, r.
it, is, ea, id (270).
Italian, Italus, -i, m.
Italy, Italia, -ae, r.
itsel, see self.

Janus, Jānus, -i, m.
javelin, pilum, -i, n.
jewel, ornāmentum, -i, n.
joy, gaudium, -i, n.
judge, jūdex, -icis, m. (165).
judgment, jūdicum, -i, n.
Julius, Jūlius, -i, m.
Jupiter, Jūpiter, Jovis, m. (262).
justly, jāstē.

keep off, arceō, 2.

kill, necō, 1; interficiō, 3; occi-
dō, 3.
kind, benigneus, -a, -um.
king, rēx, régis, m.
kingdom, régnum, -i, n.; impe-
rium, -i, n.
knife, cultor, -trī, m.
know, know how, sciō, 4.
known, nōtus, -a, -um.
labor, labor, -ōris, m.
lack, dēsum (297)
Laevinus, Laevinus, -i, m.
lake, lacus, -ūs, m. (247).
land, ager, agrī, m.; terra, -ae, r.
language, lingua, -ae, r.
large, māgnus, -a, -um.
last, suprēnum, -a, -um.
Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um.
latter (the), hic, haec, höc (275. 5).
laugh, risō, 2; (at), irrēsō, 2;
(aloud), cachinnō, 1.
law, lēx, lēgis, r.
lazy, piger, -grum.
lead, dūcō, 3; (out), ēducō, 3.
leader, ēdx, ducis, m. and r.
leaf, folium, -i, n.
leap over, trānsiliō, 4.
learn, discō, 3.
leg, crūs, crūris, n.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, r.
lesson, pēnsum, -i, n.
let, sign of subj. or imperative.
letter, epistula, -ae, r.; litterae,
-ārum, r.
levy, dēlēctus, -ūs, m.
life, vitā, -ae, r.
light, adj., levis, -e (150).
light, n., lūx, lūcis, r.; lūmen
-inis, n.
like, amō, 1.
likeness, imāgō, -inis, r.
line of battle, aciēs, -ōs, r.
lion, leō, -onis, m. (134).
listen, audiō, 4 (223).
literature, litterae, -ārum, f.
little, parvus, -a, -um.
live, vivō, 3; habitō, 1 (194).
long, longus, -a, -um; a long time, diē.
longer (no), jam, w. neg.
look at, spectō, 1.
lose, ãmittō, 3; perdō, 3.
lot (obtain by), sortior, 4.
loud (laugh out), cachinnō, 1.
love, amō, 1 (319).
low, humilis, -e.

lucky, felix, -īcis.

maiden, puella, -ae, r.
make, faciō, 3; (trial of), expior, 4.
man, vir, virī, m. (262); homo, -inis, m. (183).
Manlius, Manlius, -i, m.
manner, mōs, mōris, m.
many, multi, -ae, -a.
Marcellus, Mārcellus, -i, m.
marshal, īnstrō, 3.
master, dominus, -i, m.; magister, -trī, m.
may, licet; w. dat.
means (by means of), usus abl.
meet, obeō (327); go to meet, obviam eō, w. dat.
memory, memoria, -ae, r.
messenger, nāvibus, -i, m.
migrate, migrō, 1.
mind, animus, -ī, m.; mens, mentis, f. (273).
mindful, membror, -oris (150).
mine, mens, -ā, -um (266).
Minerva, Minerva, -ae, r.
miserable, miser, -era, -erum.
miss, désiderō, 1.
Mithridates, Mithridatēs, -is, m.
modesty, modestia, -ae, r.
month, mēnīs, -is, m.
monument, monumentum, -i, n.
moon, lūna, -ae, f.
more, plūs (208), magis.
most, plūrimus, -a, -um (208).
mother, māter, -trīs, r.
mountain, mōnus, montis, m.
move, moveō, 2.
much, multus, -a, -um (208).
multitude, multītūdo, -inis, r.
must, oportet, 2; gerundive.
my, mens, -a, -um (260).

name, nōmen, -inis, n.
nation, īgens, gentis, r.
native land, patria, -ae, r.
near, prope, w. acc.
neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um.
Neptune, Neptūnus, -i, m.
never, unquam.
new, novus, -a, -um.
night, nox, noctis, f.
nightingale, luscinia, -ae, r.
nineteenth, nōnāginta.
ninth, nōnus, -a, -um.
no, nūllus, -a, -um (200).
nobody, no one, nēmō, -inis, m.
and f. (286); that no one (neg. purpose), nē quis.
no longer, jam, w. neg.
not, nōn.
nothing, nihil, indecl.
nourish, alō, 3; nūtrīō, 4.
now, nunc; jam.
Numa, Numa, -ae, m.
number, numerus, -i, m.
nurture, nūtrīō, 4.
oak, quercus, -īs, f.
obey, pāreō, 2, w. dat.
obtain, adipiscor, 3; potior, 4, w.
abl.; (by lot), sortior, 4.

ocean, Òceanus, -i, m.
of, sign of genitive; de, w. abl.; (out of), e or ex, w. abl.
offer, prōpōnō, 3; offerě (321); praebē, 2.
often, saepe.
old, antīquus, -a, -um; vetus, -eris (141); (man), senex, -is (262); (age), senectūs, -ūris, r.
on, in, w. abl.; (of time), abl.
one, ūnus, -a, -um (200); one ... another, alias ... alias; the one ... the other, alter ... alter.
open, adj., patēns, -entis.
open, v., aperiō, 4.
opinion, jūdicium, -i, n.
oppose, obsistō, 3; w. dat.
orator, orātor, -ōris, m.
order, v., imperō, 1, w. dat.; jubēō, 2, w. acc.
order (in order to), ut, w. subj.
other, alias, -a, -ud (201); some ... others, aliī ... aliī; (of two), alter, -era, -erum.
ought, dēbeō, 2; oportet, 2; gerundive.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
ourselves, see self.
out, in combination w. verbs, see the verbs.
out of, e or ex, w. abl.
over, in combination w. verbs, see the verbs.
overcome, vincō, 3; superō, 1 (180).
owe, dēbeō, 2.
own, proprius, -a, -um; (his, her, their), saus, -a, -um; (my), me-us, -a, -um; (our), noster, -tra, -trum; (your), vester, -tra, -trum; (thy), tuus, -a, -um.
pain, dolor, -ōris, m.
parent, parēns, -entis, m. and f.
part, pars, partis, r.
pass (narrow), angustiae, -ārum, r.
pass by, praetereō (327).
patience (with), patienter; cum patientiā (144).
patiently, patienter.
peace, pāx, pācis, r.
person, populus, -ī, m.; (common), plēbs, -is, r.
peril, periculum, -ī, n.
perish, percēō (327).
Persians, Persae, -ārum, m.
physician, medicus, -ī, m.
place, n., locus, -ī, m., in plur., m. and n.
place v., ponēō, 3.
plain, planitiēs, -ēī, r.
plan, consilium, -ī, n.
pleasant, grātus, -a, -um.
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
pleasure, voluptās, -ātis, r.; (with), libenter.
pledge, fidēs, -ēī, r.
plough, n., arātrum, -ī, n.
plough, v., arō, 1.
poeum, poēma, -atīs, n.
poe, poēta, -ae, m.
point (be on the), see 422.
Polyphemus, Polyphēmus, -ī, m.
Pompey, Pompeius, Pompeī, m.
poor, miser, -era, -erum; pauper, -eris (167. 3).
possess, habēō, 2; potior, 4, w. abl,
possession (get possession of).
potior, 4, w. abl.; adipiscor, 3.
postpone, differō (321).
power, imperium, -ī, n.
praise, n., laus, laudis, r.
praise, v., laudō, 1.
precept, praeceptum, -ī, n.
prefer, mālō (316).
present (be), addum, w. dat.
pretty, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
prevent, prohibēō, 2.
prisoner, captīvus, -ī, m.; captīva, -ae, f.
proceed, prōcēdō, 3.
proclamation (make), ēdicō, 3.
promise, polliceor, 2; prōmitō, 3.
property, bona, -ōrum, n.
proud, superbus, -a, -um.
province, prōvincia, -ae, f.
prow, rōstrum, -ī n.
prudence, prūdentia, -ae, f.
punish, pūnīō, 4.
punishment, poena, -ae, f.
pupil, discipulus, -ī, m.
purpose (for the purpose of), ut or qui, w. subj.; ad, w. gerund or gerundive; suūine.
put (to flight), fugō, 1; (off), differō (321); (by), dépōnō, 3; (an end to), finīō, 4.
Pyrrhaeus, Pyrrhaus, -ī, m.

queen, rēgina, -ae, f.
quickly, celeriter.
raise, tollō, 3; levō, 1.
rather (wish), málo (316).
read, legō, 3; (aloud), recitō, 1.
receive, recipiō, 3; accipiō, 3;
excipiō, 3.
recite, recitō, 1.
recognize, āgnōscō, 3.
red, ruber, -bra, -brum.
refresh, recreō, 1.
Regulus, Rēgulus, -ī, m.
regnō, regnō, 1.
relate, trādō, 3; narrō, 1.
relieve, liberō, 1; w. abl.
remain, mancō, 2; restō, 1.
remember, memorīā teneō.
remove (= emigrate), démigrō, 1.
Remus, Remus, -ī, m.
render aid, auxilium ferō.
renown, fāma, -ae, f.
renowned, amplus, -a, -um; clārus, -a, -um.
report, nūntiō, 1.
republic, rēs pública, rei públicae, f.
respect, vēcor, 2.
respects (in all), omnibus rēbus.
rest (the), cēterī, -ae, -a.
restitution (demand), rēs repetō, 3.
restrain, coercēō, 2.
results (it), fit (327).
retain, retīneō, 2.
retreat, sē recipiō, 3.
return, redeō, (327).
reward, praelium, -ī, n.
Rhone, Rhēnus, -ī, m.
Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, m.
rich, dīves, -itis (167. 3).
rise, pass. of vehō, 3; equitō, 1.
rightly, rectē.
river, annuis, -īs, m.; fluvius, -ī, m.; flūmen, -inis, n. (172).
road, via, -ae, f.
rob, spoliō, 1; privō, 1; w. abl.
robber, latrō, -onis, m.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, m.
rose, rosa, -ae, f.
rough, asper, -era, -erum.
ruddy, ruber, -bra, -brum.
rule, regō, 3 (180); rēgnō, 1.
sad, trīstis, -e.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
sagacious, prūūdens, -entis.
sail, pass. of vehō, 3; nāvigō, 1.
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
sake (for the sake), causā, w. gen.
Sallust, Sallustius, -ī, m.
same, idem, eadem, idem (270).
Samnite, Samnīs, -ītis.
Saturn, Sāturnus, -i, m.
save, servō, 1.
say, dicō, 3; (keep saying), dic-tō, 1.
scare, terreō, 2.
school, schola, -ae, r.
Scipio, Scipīō, -onis, m.
sea, mare, -is, n.
see, vīdō, 2; (through), per-spicīō, 3.
second, secundus, -a, -um.
seek, petō, 3; quaerō, 3.
seem, vīdō, 2.
seize, rapiō, 3.
self, ipse, -a, -um (270); suī (264).
send, mittō, 3; (back) remittō, 3.
senate, senātus, -īs, m.
September, September, -bris, m.
servant, minister, -trī, m.; servus, -i, m. (66).
set-out, proficiscor, 3.
seven, septem.
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
share, partior, 4.
sharply, ācriter.
she, ea, ējus, r.
sleep, ovis, -is, r.
shepherd, pāstor, -ōris, m.
shiel, scūtum, -ī, n.
ship, nāvis, -is, r. (154).
shore, lūtus, -oris, n.
short, brevis, -e.
shout, clamōr, -ōris, m.
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, r.
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum. (71.)
side, latīus, -eris, n.
signal, signalum, -ī, n.
silent (be), tacō, 2.
since, cum, w. subj.
sing, canō, 3; cantō, 1.
sister, soror, -ōris, r.
sit, sedēō, 2.
sixth, sextus, -a, -um.
skilful, perītus, -a, -um.
slave, servus, -ī, m. (66).
slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, r.
slay, necō, 1; interficiō, 3; occidō, 3.
sleep, n., somnus, -ī, m.
sleep, v., dormiō, 4.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
smith, faber, -brī, m.
Socrates, Sōcratēs, -is, m.
soldier, miles, -ītis, m.
Solon, Solōn, -onis, m.
some one, alīquis, -qua, (quid) -quod (279.2); quādam, quae- dam, quod(quid)dam (279. 5); some . . . others, alī . . . alī; (of two parties), alterī . . . alterī; often not expressed.
something, aliquid.
son, filius, -ī, m.
song, cantus, -īs, m.; carmen, -inis, n. (278).
son-in-law, gener, -erī, m.
soon, mox.
soothe, mollīō, 4.
source, fōns, fontis, m.
Spain, Hispaniā, -ae, r.
spare, parcō, 3; w. dat.
speak, loquor, 3; dicō, 3; speak to, alloquor, 3.
spear, hāsta, -ae, r.
spiritedly, ācriter.
spring, fōns, fontis, m.
spy, explorātor, -ōris, m.
stab, trānsfigō, 3.
stain, maculō, 1.
star, stella, -ae, r. (301).
start (= set out), proficiscor, 3.
state, civītās, -ātis, r.
stature, statuā, -ae, r.
step, gradus, -ūs, m. (245).
story, fābula, -ae, r.
street, via, -ae, r.
strong, valēdus, -a, -um; fortis, -e.
study, a., studium, -ī, n.
study

study, v., studēō, 2, w. dat.
sturdy, validus, -a, -um.
successfully, optīmē; fēliciter.
suddenly, imprōvisō.
suffer, patior, 3; tolerō, 1; suf-
ferō (321).
suitable, opportūnus, -a, -um.
summer, aestās, -ātis, r.
summon, invītō, l.
sun, sōl, sōlis, m.
surpass, superō, 1; vincō, 3
(186).
surrender, dēdō, 3.
surround, cingō, 3; circumve-
niō, 4.
survive, supersum (297).
swear, jūrō, l.
sweet, dulcis, -e; suāvīs, -e.
swift, vēlōx, -ōcis; celer, -eris, -ere
(179).
sword, gladius, -i, m.

table, mēnsa, -ae, r.
tail, cauda, -ae, r.
take, capiō, 3; sūmō, 3; take a
walk, ambulō, l.
tall, altus, -a, -um.
Tarentine, Tarentīnus, -i, m.
Tarquin, Tarquinius, -i, m.
task, pēnsum, -i, n.
teach, doceō, 2.
teacher, magister, -trī, m.; prae-
ceptor, -ōris, m.
tear down, rescindō, 3.
tcdious, longus, -a, -um.
tell, nārrō, l; dīcō, 3.
temple, templum, -i, n.
tender, tener, -era, -erum.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terrify, terrō, l, 2.
terror, terror, -ōris, m.
than, quam; abl. (212).
that, conj. (in purpose or result

clauses), ut; (after verbs of fear-
ing), nē; (not), nē; (after ex-
pressions of doubt), quān; (after verbs of saying and the like, not
translated.
that, pron. (determin.), is, ca, id
(197); (demon.), ille, -a, -ud
(275); iste, -a, -ud (275); (rel.),
qui, quae, quod (279).
their, gen. plur. of is; (own),
suus, -a, -um.
themselves, see self.
then, tum; deinde.
there, ibi; as an expletive, not
translated.
thing, rēs, -ei, r.
think, arbitror, 1; putō, 1 (429).
thirst, sitiō, -is, r. (acc. -im, 
abl. -i).

thirty, trīgintā.
this, (determin.), is, ca, id (270); 
(demon.), hic, hacc, hoc (275).

thou, tū.
though, cum, w. subj.
thousand, mille (311. 6).
three, trēs, trīa (311. 4).
three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.
thrust forth, exturbō, l.
through, per, w. acc.
throw, jacio, 3; coniciō, 3.
time, tempus, -oris, x.
tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.
to, sign of dative; ad, in, w. acc.;
(expressing purpose), ut, w.
subj.; ad, w. gerund or gerund-
itive; supine.
to-day, hodiē.
together with, cum, w. abl.
toil, labōrō, l.
to-morrow, crās.
too, quoque; (much), nimum.
touch, tangō, 3.
towards, ad, in, w. acc.
tower, turris, -is, r. (149).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>definition</th>
<th>page</th>
<th>word</th>
<th>definition</th>
<th>page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>town</td>
<td>oppidum, -i, n.</td>
<td>272</td>
<td>war</td>
<td>bellum, -i, n.</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>townsmen</td>
<td>oppidănus, -i, m.</td>
<td></td>
<td>warn</td>
<td>moneō, 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>train</td>
<td>exercē, 2.</td>
<td></td>
<td>watch</td>
<td>vigilō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tree</td>
<td>arbor, -oris, r.</td>
<td></td>
<td>watchful</td>
<td>vigil, -is (151.4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trial</td>
<td>(make), experior, 4.</td>
<td></td>
<td>water</td>
<td>aqua, -ae, r.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
<td>vērus, -a, -um.</td>
<td></td>
<td>way</td>
<td>via, -ae, r.; (= respect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trumpet</td>
<td>tuba, -ae, r.</td>
<td></td>
<td>weapon</td>
<td>tēhum, -i, n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truth</td>
<td>vērum, -i, n.</td>
<td></td>
<td>weary</td>
<td>défessus, -a, -um</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try</td>
<td>experior, 4; conjor, 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td>weep</td>
<td>flōō, 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn</td>
<td>convertō, 3; (from), āverterō, 3; (out), ēveniō, 4.</td>
<td></td>
<td>welcome</td>
<td>excipiō, 3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twenty</td>
<td>vigintī.</td>
<td></td>
<td>well</td>
<td>bene.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two</td>
<td>duo, -ae, -o (311.4); (which of), uter, -tra, -trum; (each of), uterque, utraque, utrumque.</td>
<td></td>
<td>well (be)</td>
<td>valēō, 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncertain</td>
<td>incertus, -a, -um.</td>
<td></td>
<td>what</td>
<td>interrog., quis, quae, quid (quod) (279); (= that which), id quod.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undertake</td>
<td>suscipiō, 3; conjor, 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td>when</td>
<td>cum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unwilling</td>
<td>(be), nólo (316).</td>
<td></td>
<td>whether</td>
<td>num; utrum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>up</td>
<td>in combination w. verbs, see the verbs.</td>
<td></td>
<td>which</td>
<td>qui, quae, quod (279); (of two), uter, utra, utrum (200).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upon</td>
<td>in, w. acc. or abl.</td>
<td></td>
<td>while</td>
<td>dum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use</td>
<td>ūtor, 3; w. abl.</td>
<td></td>
<td>white</td>
<td>albus, -a, -um; candidus, -a, -um.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>useful</td>
<td>ūtilis, -e.</td>
<td></td>
<td>who</td>
<td>rel., qui, quae; interrog., quis, quae (279).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vain</td>
<td>frūstrā.</td>
<td></td>
<td>whole</td>
<td>tōtus, -a, -um (200).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valley</td>
<td>vallis (or vallēs), -is, r.</td>
<td></td>
<td>why</td>
<td>cūr.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valor</td>
<td>virtūs, -ānis, r.</td>
<td></td>
<td>wise</td>
<td>sapiens, -entis.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>very</td>
<td>superl. degree; admodum.</td>
<td></td>
<td>wisely</td>
<td>sapienter.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>victorious</td>
<td>vīctor, -ōris, m.</td>
<td></td>
<td>wish</td>
<td>volō (316).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>victory</td>
<td>vīctoria, -ae, r.</td>
<td></td>
<td>with</td>
<td>cum, w. abl.; sometimes abl. alone.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtue</td>
<td>virtūs, -ānis, r.</td>
<td></td>
<td>without</td>
<td>sine, w. abl.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voice</td>
<td>vōx, vōcis, r.</td>
<td></td>
<td>witness</td>
<td>spectō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wage</td>
<td>(war), gerō, 3.</td>
<td></td>
<td>wonder</td>
<td>mīrō, 1; (at), admīrō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wagon</td>
<td>carrus, -i, m.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>(= take a walk), ambulō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wall</td>
<td>mūrus, -i, m.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wander</td>
<td>vagōr, 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want</td>
<td>(= wish), volō (316); désiderō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want</td>
<td>(= lack), careō, 2.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
wooden, lignum, -a, -um.
woods, silva, -ae, f.
word, verbum, -i, n.
work, n., labor, -öris, m.; opus, -eris, n.
work, v., labóro, l.
world, mundus, -i, m.
worthy, dignus, -a, -um.
would rather, málō (316).
would that, utinam.
wound, n., vulner, -eris, n.
wound, v., vulnero, l.
wretched, miser, -era, -erum.
write, scribo, 2.

writing, scriptum, -i, n.
wrong, injuria, -ae, f.
year, annus, -i, m.
yesterday, hieri.
yonder (that), ille, -a, -ud (275.3).
you, sing. tū, plur. vōs.
young man, adulēscēns, -entis, m.; juvenis, -is, m.
your, sing. tuus, -a, -um; plur.
vester, -tra, -trum.
Zama, Zama, -ae, f.
zeal, studium, -i, n.
GLOSSARIIUM GRAMMATICUM.

ablative

ablative, ablātīvus, -ī, m.; (of instrument) instrūmentī; (of agent) agentis; (of manner) modī; (of specification) respectūs; (of separation) sēparātiōnis; (of description) quālītātis.

absolute, absolūtus, -a, -um.

accent, accentus, -ūs, m.

accusative, accusātīvus, -ī, m.

active, āctīvus, -a, -um.

adjective, adjectīvum, -ī, n.

adverb, adverbium, -ī, n.

agent, agēns, -entis, m.

agree, congruō, 3; v. abl.; concordō, 1.

agreement, concordātiōnem, -ānis, r.

alphabet, alphabetum, -ī, n.

answer, ān., respōnsum, -ī, n.

answer, a. respondō, 2.

antecedent, antecedēns, -entis, n.

apposition, appositiōnem, -ānis, r.; (be in) appōnō, 3.

cardinal, cardinālis, -e.

case, cáesus, -i, n.

clause, clausa, -ae, r.

common or appollative, appallātīvus, -a, -i m.

comparative, comparātīvus, -a, -um.

comparison, comparātiōnem, -ānis, r.

compound, compositus, -a, -um.

concessive, concessīvus, -a, -um.

condition, hypothesis, -is, r.; conditiōnem, -ānis, r.

distributive, distribūtīvus, -a, -um.

correct, adj., iectus, -a, -um.

correct, r., corrīgō, 3; ēmenō, 1.

correctly, iactē.

dative, datūvus, -ī, m.

decision, dēcīnātiōnem, -ānis, r.

decline, dēclinō, 1.

declinable, dēclinābilis, -e.

defective, defecītus, -a, -um.

degree, gradus, -ūs, m.

demonstrative, dēmonstrātīvus, -a, -um.

dependent, dépōnōns, -entis.

derive, trahō, 3.

description (abl. of), quālītās, -ātis, r.

determinative, dēfīnitus, -a, -um.

difference, discrīmen, -inis, n.

diminutive, dēminūtīvum, -ī, n.

diphthong, diphthongus, -ī, m.

direct, dīrectus, -a, -um; rēctus, -a, -um.

discourse, ōrātiōnem, -ānis, r.

discuss, tractō, 1.

dissyllable, dissyllābus, -ī, m.

distributive, distribūtīvus, -a, -um.
end, v., dēsinō, 3.
English, Anglica, -a, -um.
English (in), Anglicē.
etymology, etymologia, -ae, r.
example, exemplum, -i, n.; (for) ut; exemplī causā.
exception, exceptiō, -onis, r.
feminine, fēminīnus, -a, -um.
finitive, finitus, -a, -um.
formation, formātiō, -onis, r.
future, futūrum, -i, n.
future perfect, futūrum exactum.

gender, genus, -eris, n.
genitive, genētīvus, -ī, m.
gerund, gerundīum, -i, n.
gerundive, gerundīvum, -i, n.
govern, regō; pass. of jungō or conjungō, foll. by cum w. abl.
grahmar, grammatica, -ae, r.

imperative, modus imperātīvus
or imperātīvus, -ī, m.
imperfect, imperfectum, -ī, n.
impersonal, impersonālis, -e.
increase, crēscō, 3.
inductive, modus indicātīvus,
-ī, m., or indicātīvus, -ī, m.
indelible, indēclinābilis, -e.
direct, indirectus, -a, -um; obliquus, -a, -um.
infinite, modus infinitīvus or
infinitūvus, -ī, m.
instrument, instrumentum, -i, n.
interjection, interjectiō, -onis, r.
indefinite, interrogātīvus, -a, -um.
intransitive, intransītīvus, -a, -um.
irregular, irregulāris, -e; anomalous, -a, -um.
Latin, Latinus, -a, -um.
Latin (in), Latinē.
letter, littera, -ae, r.
limit, limitō, -i, l.
liquid, liquidus, -a, -um.
locative, locātīvus, -ī, m.
long, longus, -a, -um; productus, -a, -um.
manner, modus, -i, m.
masculine, masculinus, -a, -um.
mens, significō, 1.
meaning, significātiō, -onis, r.
mistake, n., error, -oris, m.
mistake, v., errō, 1.
monosyllable, mouosyllabum, -i, n.
mood, modus, -i, m.
mute, mūtus, -a, -um.
negative, negātīvus, -a, -um.
neces, neuter, -tra, -trum.
nominaive, nominaive, -i, m.
noun, nōmen, -inis, n.; substantīvum, -ī, n.
numeral, numerālis, -e.
object, objectum, -i, n.
ordinal, ordinalis, -e.

paradigm, paradigma, -atis, n.
participle, participium, -i, n.
particle, particula, -ae, r.
partitive, partītīvus, -a, -um.
pasive, passīvus, -a, -um.
present, presentum, -i, n.
person, persōna, -ae, r.
personal, personālis, -e.
phrase, phrasis, -is, r.
pluperfect, plusquamperfectum,
-ī, n.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>plural</th>
<th>study, v., studēō, 2.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>subject, subjectum, -ī, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>subjunctive, modus subjunctīvus, -ī, m., or subjunctīvus, -ī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>substantive, substantīvum, -ī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>substantively, substantīvē.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>superlative, superlatīvus, -a, -um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>supine, supinum, -ī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>syllable, syllaba, -ae, ĕ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>syntax, syntaxis, -is, ĕ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>teacher, praeceptor, -ōris, m.; magister, -trī, m.; magistra, -ae, ĕ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tense, tempus, -oris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>termination, terminātiō, -onis, ĕ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>transitive, transītivus, -a, -um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>treat (= discuss), tractō, ĕ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>verb, verbum, -ī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vocabulary, vōcābulārium, -ī, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vocative, vōcātīvus, -ī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>voice, vōx, vōcis, ĕ.; genus, -eris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vowel, līttera vōcālis, -is, ĕ., or vōcālis, -is, ĕ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wish, optātiō, -onis, ĕ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>word, verbum, -ī, n.; vōcābulum, -ī, n.; vōx, vōcis, ĕ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yes, certē, certissimē; vērō; ita est, ista sunt; verb of question repeated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX.

The general vocabularies are to be used as an index to words (with some exceptions) for which reference is needed. Full-face figures refer to sections, not pages. A superior figure (e.g. 10²) indicates a foot-note. Most abbreviations will readily be understood: ff. = and following; inv. = imperative.

A.

ä or ah, 61, 62.
ä-verbs, 86.
Abbreviations beginning letters, 437¹, 438.
Ablative, translation of, 14², 59¹; of agent, 61, 62; of means or instrument, 90, 91; of material, 92, II, 8¹; of separation, 128–130; of time, 135, 136; of manner, 144, 145; w. comparatives, 211, 212; of specification, 259, 260; w. itor, etc., 303, 304; w. preps., 333; of place, 336, 3; descriptive, 341, p. 222³, 4; absolute, 412; abl. sing. of vowel stems in 3d decl., 151, 2.
Abstract nouns, 168¹.
- confess, in dat. and abl. plu., 19¹.
Accent, 7; before enclitics, 7, (1).
Accusative, direct obj., 25, 26; predicate, 92, I, 5², 93, II, 7¹, 171, II, 3¹, 250, II, 4³; two accs., 131, I, 8², 197, II, 10²; w. verbs of remembering and forgetting, 305, 306; of extent, 312, 313; w. preps., 333, 4; of limit, 334, 335, 2; w. inf., 400, 401; w. some impers. verbs, 415, 3, 4, 416.
Ad, w. gerunds and gerundives, 432, 3.

Adjectives, of 1st and 2d decls., 44, 71; of 3d decl., 105, 134, 141, 150, 164; irregular, 200; comparison of, 205 ff.; poss. adj. prons., 266; interrog., 279, 3; numeral, 311; agreement with nouns, 45, II, 1¹, 53, 54; used as nouns, 117; of one, two, or three terminations, 155; agreement with understood subject, 197, I, 8⁶; order w. prep. and noun, 64, I, 7¹; order w. gen. and noun, 124, I, 6³; method of declining, 44².
Adverbs, formation of, 216 ff.; comparison of, 219; numeral, 311, 8.
Agent, abl. of, 61, 62; dat. of, 425 (5), 426, 444², cf. 428, II, 9⁶.
Aliquot adj., 279, 2.
Alphabet, 1.
Antecedent of rel. pron., 280 ff.; omitted, 287, I, 10³, p. 221¹⁰.
Antepenult, 5, 5.
Anything at all, quidquid not aliqual, 279, 6, 440¹¹.
Apposition, 118, I, 2¹, 157, 158, 197, II, 8⁷.
Augustus et Iulius (Coll.), 9.
INDEX.

B.

Battle of Cannae (for trans.), 339, 378.
Battle of Marathon (for trans.), 291.

C.

Caesar's Two Invasions of Britain (for trans.), 448.
Cardinal numerals, 311.
Cases, names of, 10; alike in form, 16.
Cause, expressed by cum clause, 375; by part., 409, 7, 412, 3.
Charón et Mercurius (Coll.), 187.
Cognomens, 195, 204.
Collective nouns, 168.²
Colloquia, Augustus et Iulius, 9, 58, 80; Pater et Filiolus, 95, 222, 302; Frater et Sororcula, 111, 162, 269, 274; Praeceptor et Discipulus, 126, 133, 195, 204, 234, 261; Magister et Discipulus, 139; Duo Pueri, 148; Father and Son, 173; Charón et Mercurius, 187; Jacobus et Augustus, 242; Sócrates et Rhadamantus, 290; Titius et Meliboeus, 332; Johannes et Jacóbus, 388.
Commands and appeals, 391.
Comparative degree, formation of, 206, (1), 219; with and without quam, 211, 212; trans. by too, p. 220.²
Comparison of adjs., 205 ff.; of advs., 219.
Compound tenses, 97.

Consonants, 3; sounds of, 4.
Consonant stems, 104, 134, 140.
Cum, conj., temporal, causal, and concessive, 372 ff.
Cum, prep., with mē, tē, etc., 265, 3; w. abl. of manner, 144, 145.
Customs and Habits of the Britons (for trans.), 449.

D.

Dative of possessor, 32; indirect obj., 31, 1, 7, 8, 9, 11, 2, 6, 10, 33, 34; w. comp. of sum, 295; of service, 291, 296, 11, 7, 344; w. certain verbs, 342, 343; double dative, 344; w. intransitives, 417, 418; of agent, 425, 426; not to be taken for abl., 184, 6.
Death of the Pet Sparrow (for trans.), 421.
Declension, paradigms of: 1st, 14; 2d in -us and -um, 38; in -er, 59, 65; adjs. of 1st and 2d, 71; 3d, mate stems, 105; liquid stems, 134; sibilant stems, 140, 141; i stems, 149, 150; mixed stems, 163–165; comparatives, 209; 4th, 245; 5th, 254; special, 262; prons., 264, 270, 275, 279; duo and trēs, 311, 4.
Definitions, sometimes not given in vocabs., 57, 1, 1¹.
Demonstrative pronouns, 275.
Deponent verbs, 1st and 2d conj., 298 ff.; 3d and 4th conj., 303 ff.
Derivation, 345.
INDEX. 279

Descriptive abl. and gen., 341; abl., p. 222.4.
Determinative pronouns, 270; used like adjs., 270, 1.
Dīc, inv. of dīcō, p. 1504.
Diphthongs, 4; quantity of, 6, 2.
Distributive numerals, 311, 8.
dō, nouns in, 168.
Double consonants, 3.
Double dative, 344.
Dūc, inv. of dūcō, p. 1504.
Dum with pres. ind., 26313, 44219.
Duo Pueri (Coll.), 148.

E.
ē-verbs, 112.
ē-verbs, 180, 235.
English method of pronunciation, 8.
Enclitics, 7, (1).
er, nouns and adjs. of 2d decl. in, 67; compar. of adjs. in, 206, (1), (3).
ē-vi, perfects in, 119a.
Extent, accusative of, 312, 313.

F.
Fables (for trans.), 441-447.
Fac, inv. of faciō, p. 1504.
Father and Son (Coll.), 173.
Feminine gender, 11, 2, 4; in 1st decl., 13; in 3d decl., 168, 2; in 4th decl., 244, 1; in 5th decl., 253.
Fer, inv. of ferō, p. 1504.
Ferō, compounds of, 322.
Fifth decl., 252 ff.
First conj., 86 ff., 351 ff.; first periphrastic conj., 422.
First decl., 12 ff., 52 ff.
Fourth conj., 223 ff., 357 ff.
Fourth decl., 243 ff.
Frater et Sorōrcula (Coll.), 111, 162, 269, 274.

Future translated by Eng. pres., 116, 1, 18, 385, 31; fut. inv., 391, (3); equivalent to inv., 43818.

G.

Genitive, like Eng. possessive, 30, 1, 61; of nouns in -us and -iūm, 79; with verbs of remembering and forgetting, 305, 396; participive, 340, 43817, 4395, 44012; descriptive, 341; with certain impers. verbs, 415, 3, 4, 416; order w. adj. and noun, 124, 1, 61.
Gerund, 430-432; nom. of supplied by inf., 431, 1.
Gerundive, p. 342; 423, 432; diff. between gerund and gerundive construction, 432.
gō, nouns in, 168.

II.

Hīc, demon. of 1st pers., 275, 1; in contrast with ille, 275, 5.
Historical tenses, 347; prs. 4448.
Hortatory subjunctive, 390, 391.

I.

i-stems, 149 ff.
i-verbs, 223.
Ille, demon. of 3d pers., 275, 3; in contrast with hic, 275, 5.
Imperfect, denoting continuance, 115, I, 52; of customary action, 44512.
Imperative, 389 ff.; not common in prohibitions, 391, (2)5.
Impersonal verbs and verbs used impersonally, 415 ff., 425, (4).
In not always to be translated by
INDEX.

in, 146, 1, 21, 185, 11, 7, 296, 11, 105.
In omitted, 2917.
INCREASE in the gen., 152, 11.
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS, 279.
INDICATIVE in cond. sentences, 385.
INDIRECT DISCOURSE, 399 ff.
INDIRECT OBJECT 31, 1, 7, 8, 9, 11, 2, 6, 10, 33, 34.
INDIRECT QUESTIONS, 379 ff.
INFINITIVE as in Eng., 395 ff.; w. sub. acc., 399 ff.; tenses of, 402-403; fut. pass., 4021, 405, 1, 21.
INSTRUMENT, abl. of, 90, 91.
INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN, 279; adj., 279, 3, advs., 380, 1.
INTRANSITIVE VERBS used impersonally in the passive, 417, 418.
-sō, nouns in, 168; verbs in, of 3d conj., 235.
ipse, distinguished from sē, 270, 4, 5; how translated, 270, 6.
IRREGULAR adj.s., 200 ff.; verbs, 72 ff., 292 ff., 316 ff.
Is as pers. pron., 270, 2; this or that, 275, 6.
ISLANDS, names of, 334.
It, expletive, 35, 1, 11, 56, 1, 72.
-jum in gen. plu., 151, 3.
-ius in gen. sing. of adj.s., 200.
-ius and -ium, gen. of nouns in, 79; voc. of nouns in -ius, 79.
-īvi, perf.s. in, often drop v, 231, 1, 91, 2, 327, 2.

J.
Jacōbus et Augustus (Coll.), 242.
Johannes et Jacōbus (Coll.), 388.

L.
LETTERS (for trans.), 437-440.
LIMIT, acc. of, 335, 23.
LIQUIDS, 3.
LIQUID STEMS, 134 ff.
-lis, superlative of adj.s. in, 207.
LOCATIVE, 10, 3, 334, 335, 1; in 1st decl., 14, 2; in 2d decl., 40; in 3d decl., 175.

M.
Magister et Discipulius (Coll.), 139.
MANNER, how expressed, 144, 145.
Mārcus Porcius Catō, Puer (for trans.), 394.
MASCULINE GENDER, 11, 1, 3; in 2d decl., 37; in 3d decl., 168, 1; in 4th decl., 244; in 5th decl., 253.
MATERIAL, how expressed, 92, 11, 81.
MEANS, abl. of, 90, 91.
MIXED STEMS, 163 ff.
MOTION, verbs of, foll. by acc. with and without prep., 333-335.
MUTES, 3.
MUTE STEMS, 105 ff.

N.
NARRATIVE SENTENCES, 372, (3).
Nātica and Ennius (for trans.), 407.
Ne, enclitic, 7, (1), 28, 12, 51, 31, 581.
Nē, 358, 369, 391, (1); omitted after cāvē, p. 1784.
NEUTER GENDER, 11, 5; in 2d decl., 37; in 3d decl., 168, 3.
NOLI in prohibitions, 391 (1).
Nōmen, 195, 204.
NOMINATIVE, subj., 24; pred., 46, 47, 92, 1, 63, 93, 11, 63.
Nōnne, 51, 33.
-ns, nouns in, 167, 1.
NUMERAL adj.s., 311; advs., 311, 8.

O.
Ō, w. voc., 56, 11, 14.
OBJECT, direct, 25, 26; indirect, 31, 1, 7, 8, 9, 11, 2, 6, 10, 33, 34.
INDEX.

Periphrastic Conjugations: act., 422; pass., 423; paradigms, 424.

Personal Pronouns, 264, 265;
when nom. of is expressed, 265, 2.

Place, expressions of, 334 ff.

Possessive Adj. Prons., 266, when omitted, 100.

Possessiv, dat. of, 32; cf. 4414.

Praeceptor et Discipulas (Coll.), 126, 133, 195, 204, 234, 261.

Praenomen, 195, 204.

Predicate Nom., 46, 47, 92, I, 63;
93, 11, 62; acc., 92, I, 52, 93, 11,
74, 171, 11, 31.

Prepositions, 333; order w. adj.
and noun, 64, I, 71.

Present, translation of, 431; de-
noting continuance, 115, I, 52;
Eng. pres. for Lat. fut., 116, I,
13, 385, 31; for Lat. fut. perf.,
413, 11, 102; sometimes distin-
guished from perf. by short pe-
nult, 1195, 191, I, 21; w. dum,
26312, 44212; historical, 4445;

Pres. subj. trans. as fut., 369, 1, 4.

Primary Tenses, 347.

Principal Parts of Verbs, 861.

Principal Tenses, 347.

Prohibitions, 391, (1), (2).

Progressive Form in Eng. to be

distinguished from passive, 69,
11, 89, 123, 11, 31.

Pronunciation, Roman method,
4; English method, 8.

Proserpina (for trans.), 199, 215,
263.

Publicus Cornelius Scipio (for
trans.), 188.

Purpose, expressed by ut w. subj.,
352, 353; qui w. subj., 364;
fut. part., 410, I, 97; ad w.
gerundive, 432, 3; supine, 433,
434; causā w. gen. of gerund or
gerundive, 435, I, 3, p. 2215.

Or = because of, 330, II, 23.

Omission of my, thy, his, etc., 100;
of ut, 4388, 44611; of in, 2917;
of nē, p. 1784; of fore in trans.,
428, I, 43.

Order of words in sentence, 23;
35, 1; 56, I, 103; 64, I, 71;
69, I, 101; 77, I, 50; 93, I, 92;
124, I, 63; 202, I, 65; 21511;
quiserque, 287, I, 62; ferē,
329, I, 61; 386, I, 39;
404; 410, II, 95;
43810; 44010; 4467; p. 2168;
p. 2175; p. 21918.

Ordinal Numerals, 311.

Ought, of past time, 419, I, 83.

Participles, 408 ff.; in principal
parts, 861; decl. of pres. act.,
165, 408, 1, of perf. and fut.,
408, 2; perf. in comp. tenses as
adj., 192, I, 71, 404, I, 41;
part. and verb trans. by two co-
ordinate verbs, 409, 2, 410, I, 54;
412, 4; abl. absolute, 412, 413;
Eng. perf. act. part., how ren-
dered, 412, 6, 7; used as nouns,
2913.

Passive to be distinguished from
progressive form in Eng., 69, II,
86, 123, II, 31.

Pater et Filiolus (Coll.), 95, 222,
302.

Partitive Gen., 340, 43817, 4399;
44012.

Penult, 5, 5.

Perfect, sometimes distinguished
from pres. by long penult, 1195,
191, I, 21, 232, I, 11; definite and
indefinite, 347; perf. subj. in pro-
hibitations, 391, (2); perf. part.
trans. by pres., 44212, p. 2178;
W. ubi, ut, etc., 44413; perf. subj.
really fut. perf., 391, (2)2.
Q.

Quantity of vowels and diphthongs, 6, 1, 2; of syllables, 6, 3, 4, 5.
Quīn, w. subj., 349, 350.
Quis, indef. pron. w. si, etc., 362, 1, 61, 43815.

R.

r, as sign of passive, 871; for s, 731, 3, 4, 142.
Reflexive pronoun, 264, 265.
Relative pronoun, 279; agreement, 280 ff.; in purpose clause, 364.
Rest, verbs of, foll. by abl., 333–335.
Result, w. ut, 368 ff.; to be distinguished from purpose, 352, 368, 44712.
Roman method of pronun., 4.
-ts, nouns in, 167, 1.

S.

-s, monosyllables in, 167, 2.
Secondary tenses, 347.
Second decl., in -us and -um, 36 ff., 52 ff., in -er, 59 ff.
Semi-deponents, p. 1772.
Separation, how expressed, 128 ff.
Sequence of tenses, 347 ff.

Sibilant, 3.
Sibilant stems, 140 ff.
Sōcratēs et Rhadamanthus (Coll.), 290.
Sounds of letters, 4.
Specification, abl. of, 259, 260, p. 2186.
Stem, 121; in 2d decl., 36, 42; in verbs, 861; in 3d decl., 103, 104, 107, 151, 1, 152, 166, 167; in 4th decl., 243; in 5th decl., 252. Perf. stem w. long vowel, 1195.

Subject nom., 24; acc. 401; omitted, 50, I, 91.
Subjunctive of purpose, 352, 353, 364; of result, 368; w. cum, 372; in ind. questions, 379 ff.; in wishes and conditions, 383 ff.; hortatory, 390; perf. really fut. perf., 391, (2)2; fut. tense of, 425 (1). Meanings not given in paradigms, p. 261.
Superlative, formation of, 266, (2), (3); strengthened by quam, 4376.
Supine, 433, 434.
S. V. B. E. V., 4371.

Syllables, 5; quantity of, 6, 3, 4, 5.

Synonymous Words, puérī, liberī, 60; magister, dominus, 66; minister, servus, 66; homo, vir, 138; amnis, flūmen, fluvius, 172; hostis, inimicus, 172; celer, velox, 179; superō, vincō, 186; habitō, vivō, 194; animus, mens, 273; canthus, carmen, 278; sidus, stella, 301; amō, diligō, volō, desiderō, 319; interrogō, rogō, quaerō, 382; at, sed, autem, 393; jūdicō, censeō, existimō, arbitror, putō, opinor, 429.

T.

Terminations, 15.
There, expletive, 35, 1, 2; 56, 1, 72; 220, I, 12.
Third decl., mute stems, 105 ff.; liquid stems, 134 ff.; sibilant
INDEX.

stems, 140 ff.; i-stems, 149 ff.;
mixed stems, 163 ff.
Time when or within which, 135,
136; how long, 312, 313; ex-
pressed by cum clause, 372, 373,
by part., 409, 1, 2, 8, 412; rela-
tive time in tenses of inf., 402,
403, 405, II, 86, of part., 409.
Tityrus et Meliboeus (Coll.), 332.
Towns, names of, 334, 335.
Translation, passages for, Püblius
Cornélius Scipio, 188; Pröser-
pina, 199, 215, 263; Battle of
Marathon, 291; Maxims, 320;
Battle of Cannae, 339, 378; Már-
cus Percius Cato, Puer, 394; Nă-
sica and Ennius, 407; Death of
the Pet Sparrow, 421; Letters,
437–440; Fables, 441–447; Cae-
sar’s Two Invasions of Britain,
448; Customs and Habits of
the Britons, 449.

U.
-ubus in dat. and abl. of 4th decl.,

Ultima, 5, 5.
Ut, of purpose, 352 ff.; of result,
367 ff.; w. ind., 4374, 4392;
omitted, 4389, 44671.

V.
v, sometimes dropped, 231, 1, 912,
327, 2, 4215.
Vocative, 10, 2; in 2nd decl., 39;
of filius, etc., 79.
Vocabulary following exercises,
75, 2.
Vowels, how marked; 2; sounds
of, 4; quantity of, 6, 1, 2.

W.
Wishes, 383 ff.
With not always to be translated
by cum, 185, II, 52.

X.
-x, monosyllables in, 167, 2.

Y.
You, sing. or plu., 732.